

Gunpowder Creek Watershed TMDL Alternative: 2020 Progress Report

Reporting Period: September 2019 – August 2020

1.0 Summary

In February 2018, the Kentucky Division of Water (DOW) and EPA Region 4 accepted the Gunpowder TMDL Alternative plan, which consists of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan and the Primary Contact Recreation (PCR) supplement. This plan addresses the 303(d)–listed segments within Gunpowder Creek Watershed (Figure 1). A progress report is submitted to DOW annually. The following sections provide an overview of the implementation that has occurred in the subwatersheds of Gunpowder Creek and the results of monitoring during the current reporting period.

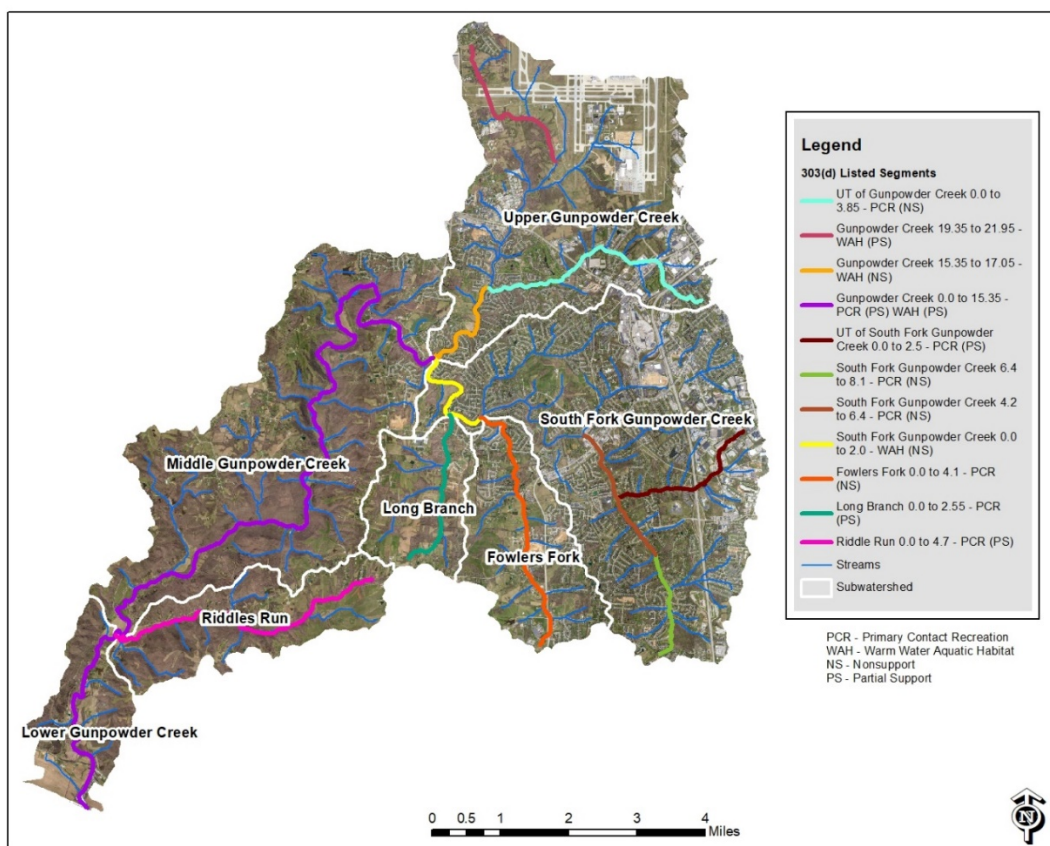


Figure 1.0: Gunpowder Creek Watershed and Subwatersheds and 303(d)-listed Segments

2.0 Implementation

The Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan and the Primary Contact Recreation (PCR) supplement outline implementation measures for each of the subwatersheds with the goal of improving water quality. The implementation ranges from education and outreach efforts to on-the-ground projects such as detention basin retrofits. The implementation measures and progress during this reporting period are identified in the tables below as well as the corresponding maps and photos.

2.1 Overall Watershed

Table 2.1.1 Overall Watershed Implementation

BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Revise Rules and Regulations	a. Continue coordination with SD1 and Florence regarding channel protection controls.	(1a) Since this goal was originally established in the watershed plan, SD1 has implemented a Q-critical requirement for better channel protection in new development. This requirement became effective on Oct 1, 2015. Specific details of the requirement were included in the revised SD1 Rules and Regulations, which was approved by KDOW on August 3, 2020.
	b. Coordinate with BCPC to incorporate more LID strategies into Planning/Zoning Requirements and Subdivision Regulations.	
2. Stewardship Programs	a. Identify entities willing to contribute to project funding and/or implementation efforts.	(2a) BCCD has worked closely with the KDFRW Stream Mitigation Team to identify possible stream mitigation projects in Boone County. The Amazon development along Aero Parkway will impact thousands of feet of stream, primarily in the Upper Gunpowder Creek watershed. Developers are required to mitigate this impact and pay into the KDFRW in-lieu fee program. BCCD has worked diligently with KDFRW Stream Mitigation program to identify possible stream mitigation projects in Boone County as close to the impact as possible. Two sites have been selected and projects are in the concept planning phase (see Section 2.7).
	b. Continue to engage and educate the local community to garner support for project implementation and future success monitoring efforts.	
3. Training/Technical Support Program	Develop training material and conduct training sessions to educate local designers and contractors on the importance of water quality and channel protection controls.	On October 3, 2019 the Southwest Ohio and Northern Kentucky Storm Water Collaborative hosted a Stormwater Field Day. There were 120 attendees that learned about construction and post-construction BMP requirements, design and maintenance (Figure 2.1.1).
4. Education and Outreach	a. Publish project updates on the BCCD website and in the Landscapes and What's Happening newsletters.	See Table 2.1.2 and Boone County Conservation District Education Programs (Figures 2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.1.4, and 2.1.5) <i>Note: Due to COVID-19 Restrictions, many events had to be postponed or canceled from March - present.</i>
	b. Incorporate educational signage into any projects, whenever feasible.	

BCPC - Boone County Planning Commission, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources

Table 2.1.2 Boone County Conservation District Education and Outreach Events

Date	Program Name	Program Type	#Reached
Sept 7, 2019	Pond Algae Workshop	Workshop	25
Oct 2, 2019	Macroinvertebrate homeschool lesson	Homeschool	5
Oct 26, 2019	Gunpowder Creek Nature Hike	Family	10
Dec 14, 2019	Watershed Planning presentation to KY Habitat Management Symposium	Workshop	50
Jan 15, 2020	Watershed Elem. School Lesson	Elem. School	50
Feb 28, 2020	Gateway Storm Water Project presentation to faculty	Workshop	5
		Total	145



Figure 2.1.1: Stormwater Field Day



Figure 2.1.2: Pond Algae Workshop – Sample Collection



Figure 2.1.3: Pond Algae Workshop – Presentation



Figure 2.1.4: Macroinvertebrate Homeschool Lesson



Figure 2.1.5: Gunpowder Creek Nature Hike

2.2 Upper Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed

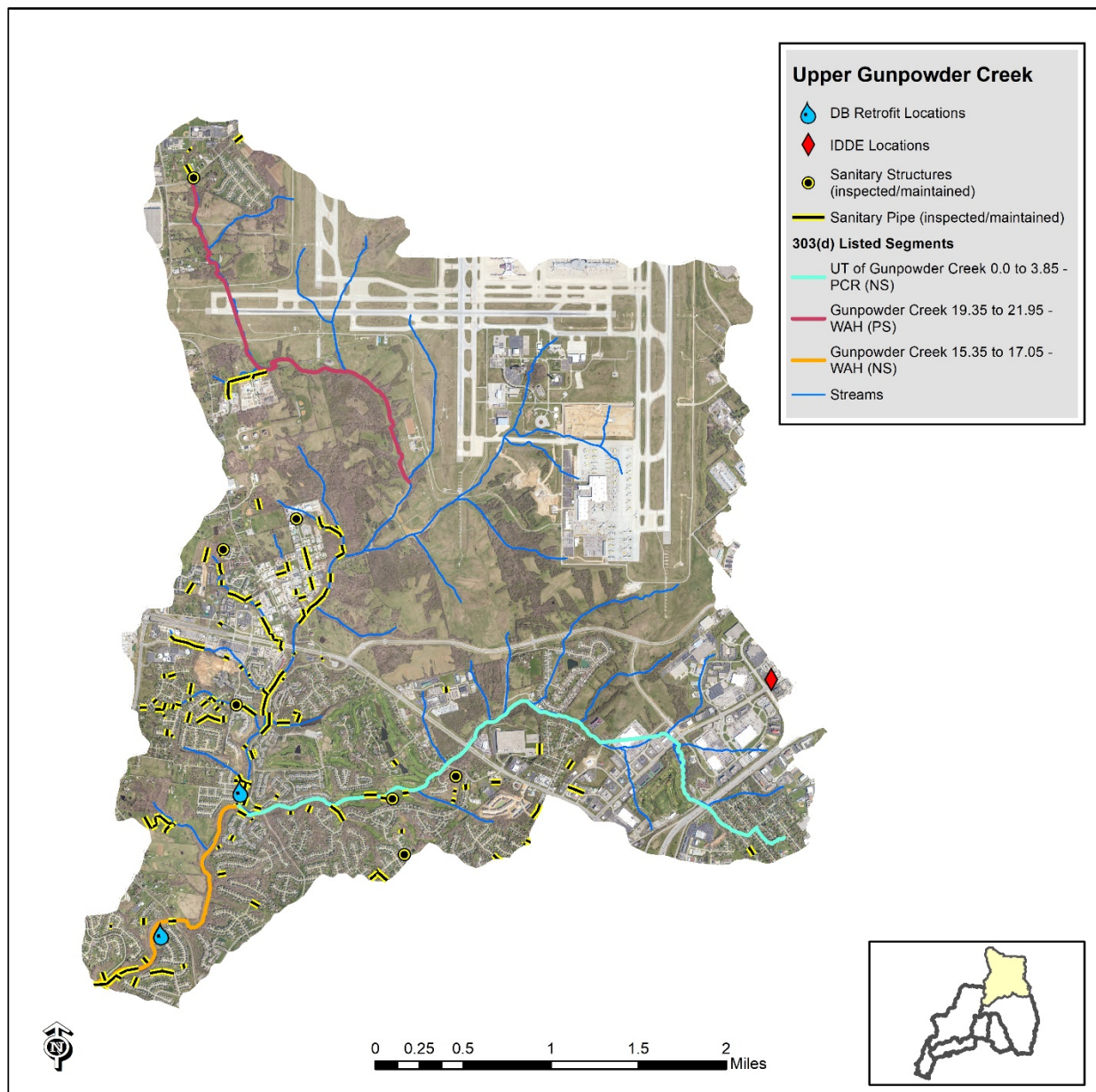


Figure 2.2.1: Upper Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.2 Upper Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed Implementation


BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR	a. Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	No information for this reporting period
	b. Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings	a. Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation	No information for this reporting period
	b. Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes	
	c. Plant vegetation along the stream banks	
3. Bioinfiltration	a. Locate opportunities for bioinfiltration	No information for this reporting period
	b. Coordinate with landowners	
	c. Design and construct bioinfiltration	
4. Detention Basin Retrofits 	a. Locate existing basins with potential based on capacity, impact, and potential owner cooperation	SD1 conducted a detention basin analysis project to identify and prioritize existing detention basins for retrofits. Two basins were selected in this sub-watershed for retrofits (Figure 2.2.1). See Appendix D: Holbrook Lane Detention Basin - Basin Number 018.12.0667 and Fieldhurst Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 018.13.0566) for details. These retrofits will be completed before the end of 2020. In addition to these retrofit locations, the airport was awarded 319(h) funding to implement controls on the property's southwest detention basin, which controls a five sq. mi. drainage area in the upper portion of the sub-watershed. Implementation is expected in 2021.
	b. Work with owners to secure grant money where possible	
	c. Design and install the retrofits, overcompensating locally if necessary to reach the design target for the entire subwatershed, considering impact of BMPs	
5. Detention Basins	a. Locate opportunities for new detention basins in heavily developed areas that do not currently have detention	No information for this reporting period



Table 2.2 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
5. Detention Basins (cont.)	b. Coordinate with landowners to allow construction of a new basin or obtain property to construct new detention basins	No information for this reporting period
	c. Design and construct the detention basins that provide channel protection controls	
6. Wetland Creation/ Restoration	a. Evaluate feasibility of obtaining a single, generic permit from KDOW to perform this type of work in the floodplain	No information for this reporting period
	b. Continue coordination and cost-sharing with NKU FILO	
	c. Design and construct/restore wetlands	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
7. Pet Waste Management	a. Develop educational materials and programing to inform and encourage the public to properly manage pet waste	No information for this reporting period
	b. Conduct workshops and participate in community events to provide education	
	c. Establish pet waste disposal stations in key locations such as parks and community areas	
	d. Integrate the information into Boone County Cooperative Extension programing	
8. Illicit Discharge Detection & Elimination (IDDE) Program Implementation 	a. Continue to implement the MS4 IDDE programs in SD1 and Florence Storm Water Service Areas	(8a) Implementation of the MS4 IDDE programs in the Florence and SD1 Service Area continued (Figure 2.2.2). (8b) One illicit was found and eliminated in the Florence Service Area. No illicits were found within the SD1 Service Area of the Upper Gunpowder Subwatershed during this reporting period.
	b. Document and track eliminated illicit discharges associated with wastewater (failing septs, broken laterals, etc.)	

Table 2.2 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
9. Sanitary Improvements 	a. Continue to implement the CMOM program in the SD1 service area	(9a,b) Over 38,000 feet of sanitary sewer and 8 sanitary structures were inspected and/or maintained during this reporting period.
	b. Document all repairs, improvements and upgrades for the sanitary system within the watershed	

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, FILO – Fee In Lieu of, CMOM - Capacity, Management, Operations and Maintenance



Figure 2.2.1: SD1 performing Assessment of Filedhurst Detention Basin



Figure 2.2.2: SD1 performing field analysis of an IDDE sample

2.3 South Fork Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed

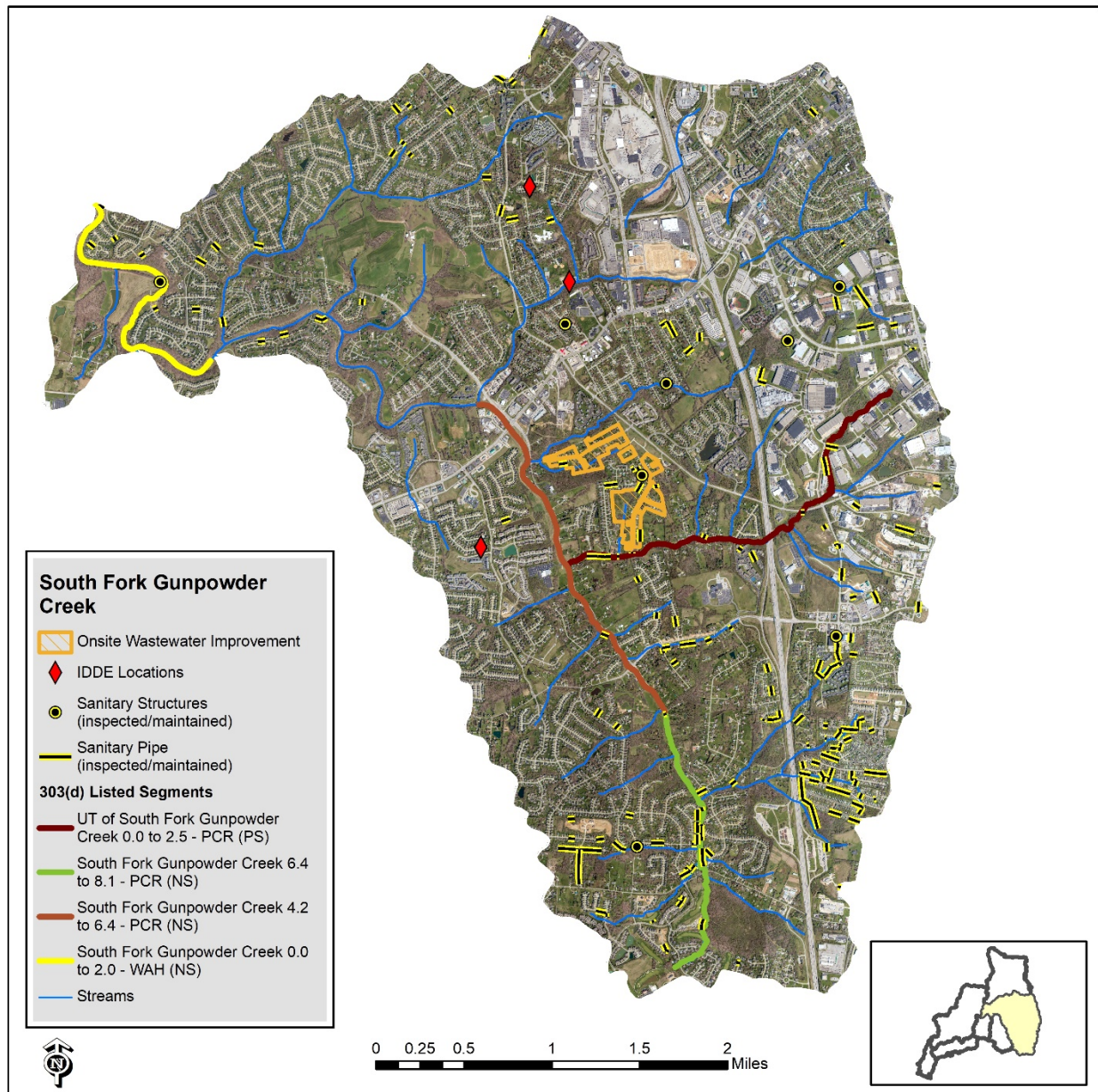


Figure 2.3.1: South Fork Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.3 South Fork Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed Implementation

BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1.Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR	a) Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	No information for this reporting period
	b) Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings	a) Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes.	
	c) Plant vegetation along the stream banks.	
3. Bioinfiltration	a) Locate opportunities for bioinfiltration.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners.	
	c) Design and construct bioinfiltration.	
4. Detention Basin Retrofits	a. Locate existing basins with potential based on capacity, impact, and potential owner cooperation.	No information for this reporting period
	b. Work with owners to secure grant money where possible.	
	c. Design and install the retrofits, overcompensating locally if necessary to reach the design target for the entire subwatershed, considering impact of BMPs.	
5. Detention Basins	a) Locate opportunities for new detention basins in heavily developed areas that do not currently have detention.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners to allow construction of a new basin or obtain property to construct new detention basins.	
	c) Design and construct the detention basins that provide channel protection controls.	




Table 2.3 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
6. Wetland Creation/ Restoration	a) Evaluate feasibility of obtaining a single, generic permit from DOW to perform this type of work in the floodplain.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Continue coordination and cost-sharing with NKU FILO.	
	c) Design and construct/restore wetlands.	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
7. Onsite Wastewater Improvement 	a) Meet with key stakeholders (responsible parties) and determine future sewer and onsite wastewater options for homes on septic	7) Boone County has worked with SD1 and other stakeholders to complete a large septic to sewer project along Evergreen Dr., Ridgeview Dr. and Mary Lou Dr. in the subwatershed. Part of the funding is through a Community Block Development grant and 319(h) funding. During this reporting period 95 homes were removed from septic and placed on public sewer. This area was identified by the NKHD as a hotspot location for failing septic systems. (Figure 2.3.2)
	b) Based on stakeholder discussions, develop a strategy that may include running sewers to existing homes, repairing septic systems, installing alternative onsite wastewater systems, etc.	
	c) Secure appropriate funding source(s) for implementation of the strategy	
	d) Implement strategy	
8. Pet Waste Management	a) Develop educational materials and programing to inform and encourage the public to properly manage pet waste	No information for this reporting period
	b) Conduct workshops and participate in community events to provide education	
	c) Establish pet waste disposal stations in key locations such as parks and community areas	
	d) Integrate the information into Boone County Cooperative Extension programing	

Table 2.3 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
9. IDDE Program Implementation 	a) Continue to implement the MS4 IDDE programs in SD1 and Florence Storm Water Service Areas.	(9a) Implementation of the MS4 IDDE programs in the Florence and SD1 Service Area continued. (9b) Three illicit discharges were found and eliminated in the Florence Service Area. No illicit discharges were found within the SD1 Service Area of the South Fork Gunpowder Subwatershed during this reporting period.
	b) Document and track eliminated illicit discharges associated with wastewater (failing septic, broken laterals, etc.)	
10. Sanitary Improvements 	a) Continue to implement the CMOM program in the SD1 service area	(10a,b) Over 45,700 feet of sanitary sewer and 8 sanitary structures were inspected and/or maintained during this reporting period.
	b) Document all repairs, improvements and upgrades for the sanitary system within the watershed	

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, FILO – Fee In Lieu of, CMOM - Capacity, Management, Operations and Maintenance



Figure 2.3.2: Enlarged Area of the Onsite Wastewater Project

2.4 Fowlers Fork Subwatershed

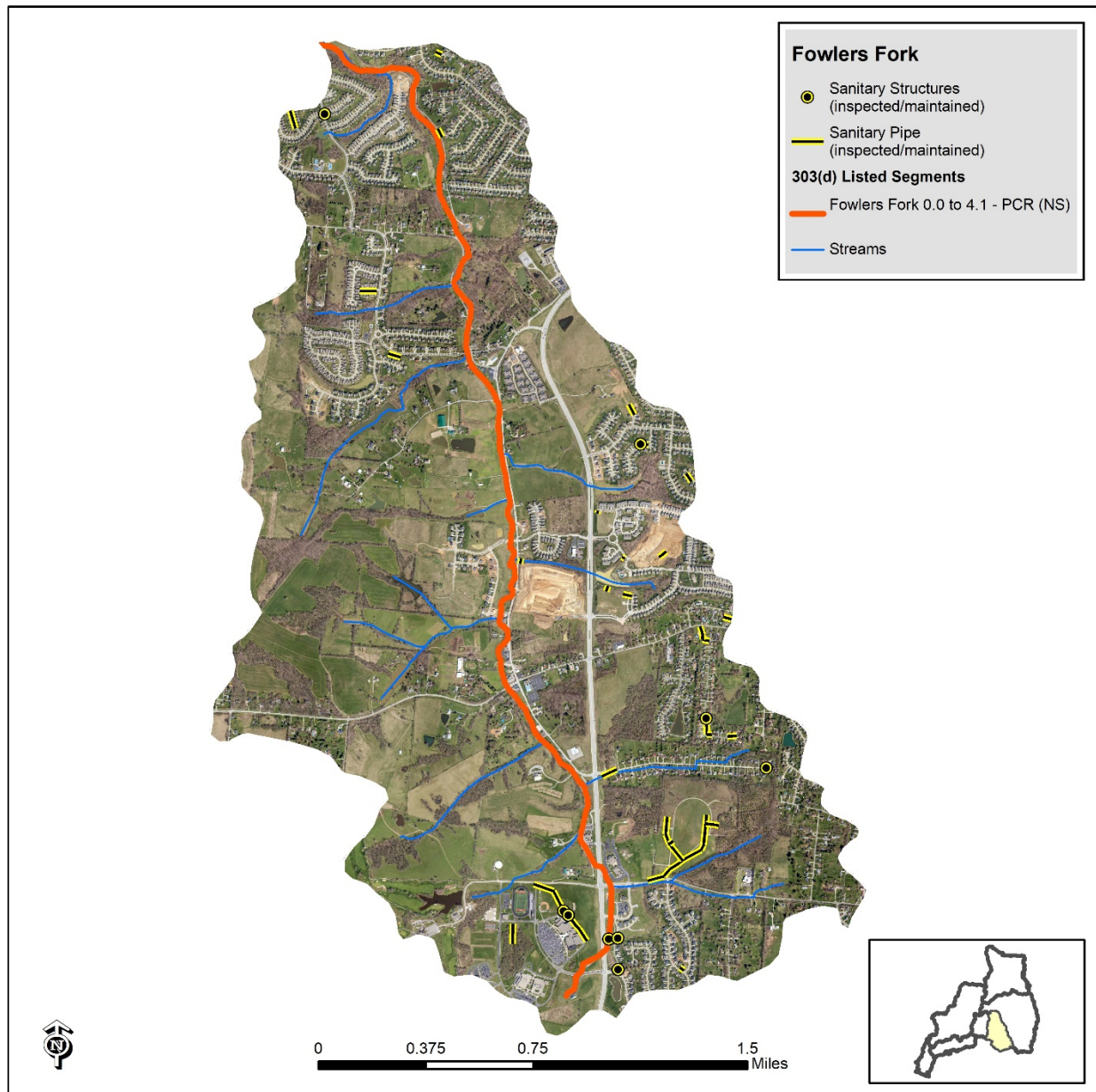



Figure 2.4.1: Fowlers Fork Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.4 Fowlers Fork Subwatershed Implementation

BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR	a) Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	No information for this reporting period
	b) Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings	a) Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation	No information for this reporting period
	b) Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes	
	c) Plant vegetation along the stream banks	
3. Bioinfiltration	a) Locate opportunities for bioinfiltration	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners	
	c) Design and construct bioinfiltration	
4. Detention Basin Retrofits	a) Locate existing basins with potential based on capacity, impact, and potential owner cooperation	No information for this reporting period
	b) Work with owners to secure grant money where possible	
	c) Design and install the retrofits, overcompensating locally if necessary to reach the design target for the entire subwatershed, considering impact of BMPs	
5. Detention Basins	a) Locate opportunities for new detention basins in heavily developed areas that do not currently have detention	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners to allow construction of a new basin or obtain property to construct new detention basins	
	c) Design and construct the detention basins that provide channel protection controls	

Table 2.4 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
6. Wetland Creation/ Restoration	a) Evaluate feasibility of obtaining a single, generic permit from DOW to perform this type of work in the floodplain	No information for this reporting period
	b) Continue coordination and cost-sharing with NKU FILO	
	c) Design and construct/restore wetlands	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
7. Onsite Wastewater Improvement	a) Meet with key stakeholders (responsible parties) and determine future sewer and onsite wastewater options for homes on septic	No information for this reporting period
	b) Based on stakeholder discussions, develop a strategy that may include running sewers to existing homes, repairing septic systems, installing alternative onsite wastewater systems, etc.	
	c) Secure appropriate funding source(s) for implementation of the strategy	
	d) Implement strategy	
8. Agriculture Improvement	Livestock Exclusion Fencing	No information for this reporting period
9. Pet Waste Management	a) Develop educational materials and programing to inform and encourage the public to properly manage pet waste	No information for this reporting period
	b) Conduct workshops and participate in community events to provide education	
	c) Establish pet waste disposal stations in key locations such as parks and community areas	
	d) Integrate the information into Boone County Cooperative Extension programing	

Table 2.4 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
10. IDDE Program Implementation	a) Continue to implement the MS4 IDDE programs in SD1 and Florence Storm Water Service Areas	(10a) Implementation of the MS4 IDDE programs in the Florence and SD1 Service Area continued. (10b) No illicit discharges were found within the Fowlers Fork Subwatershed during this reporting period.
	b) Document and track eliminated illicit discharges associated with wastewater (failing septic, broken laterals, etc.)	
11. Sanitary Improvements 	a) Continue to implement the CMOM program in the SD1 service area	(11a,b) Over 8,800 feet of sanitary sewer and 9 sanitary structures were inspected and/or maintained during this reporting period (Figure 2.4.2).
	b) Document all repairs, improvements and upgrades for the sanitary system within the watershed	

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife, FILO – Fee In Lieu of, CMOM - Capacity, Management, Operations and Maintenance



Figure 2.4.2: SD1 performing a sanitary structure inspection

2.5 Long Branch Subwatershed

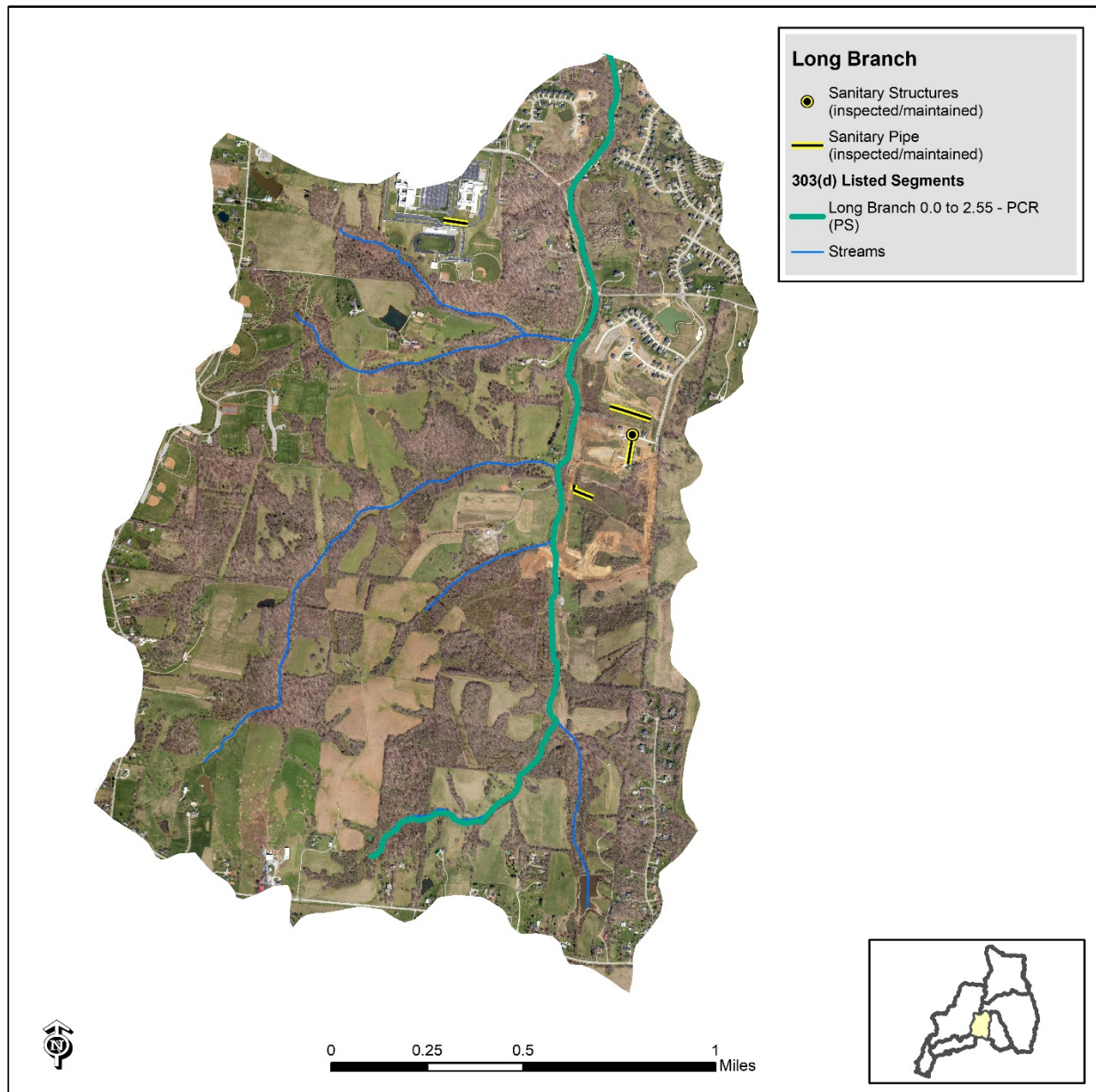



Figure 2.5.1: Long Branch Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.5 Long Branch Subwatershed Implementation

BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR	a) Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	No information for this reporting period
	b) Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings	a) Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes.	
	c) Plant vegetation along the stream banks.	
3. Bioinfiltration	a) Locate opportunities for bioinfiltration.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners.	
	c) Design and construct bioinfiltration.	
4. Detention Basin Retrofits	a) Locate existing basins with potential based on capacity, impact, and potential owner cooperation.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Work with owners to secure grant money where possible.	
	c) Design and install the retrofits, overcompensating locally if necessary to reach the design target for the entire subwatershed, considering impact of BMPs.	
5. Detention Basins	a) Locate opportunities for new detention basins in heavily developed areas that do not currently have detention.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Coordinate with landowners to allow construction of a new basin or obtain property to construct new detention basins.	
	c) Design and construct the detention basins that provide channel protection controls.	

Table 2.5 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
6. Wetland Creation/ Restoration	a) Evaluate feasibility of obtaining a single, generic permit from DOW to perform this type of work in the floodplain.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Continue coordination and cost-sharing with NKU FILO.	
	c) Design and construct/restore wetlands.	
7. Conservation of Open Areas	a) Continue to promote conservation of forested lands, particularly those that currently serve as riparian buffer zones.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Conduct meeting with local conservation groups regarding efforts to identify potential properties for conservation.	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
8. Onsite Wastewater Improvement	a) Meet with key stakeholders (responsible parties) and determine future sewer and onsite wastewater options for homes on septic	No information for this reporting period
	b) Based on stakeholder discussions, develop a strategy that may include running sewers to existing homes, repairing septic systems, installing alternative onsite wastewater systems, etc.	
	c) Secure appropriate funding source(s) for implementation of the strategy	
	d) Implement strategy	
9. Agriculture Improvement	Livestock Exclusion Fencing	No information for this reporting period

Table 2.5 cont.		
BMP Category	BMP Category	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
10. IDDE Program Implementation	a) Continue to implement the MS4 IDDE programs in SD1 and Florence Storm Water Service Areas.	(10a) Implementation of the MS4 IDDE programs in the Florence and SD1 Service Area continued. (10b) No illicit discharges were found within the Long Branch Subwatershed during this reporting period.
	b) Document and track eliminated illicit discharges associated with wastewater (failing septs, broken laterals, etc.)	
11. Sanitary Improvements 	a) Continue to implement the CMOM program in the SD1 service area	(11a,b) Over 1,600 feet of sanitary sewer 1 sanitary structures were inspected and/or maintained during this reporting period (Figure 2.5.2).
	b) Document all repairs, improvements and upgrades for the sanitary system within the watershed.	

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife, FILO – Fee In Lieu of, CMOM - Capacity, Management, Operations and Maintenance

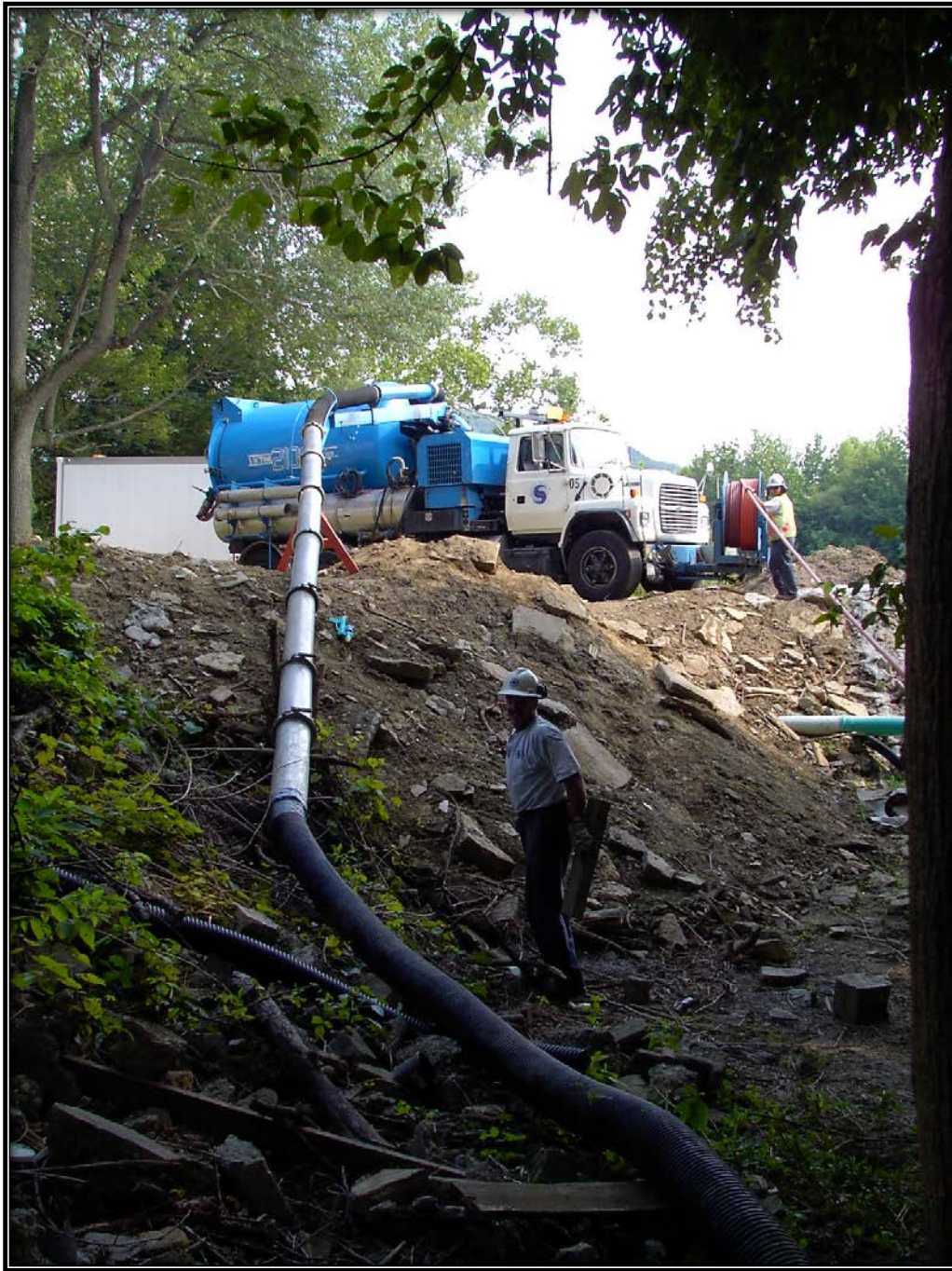


Figure 2.5.2: SD1 performing sewer maintenance and repair

2.6 Riddles Run Subwatershed

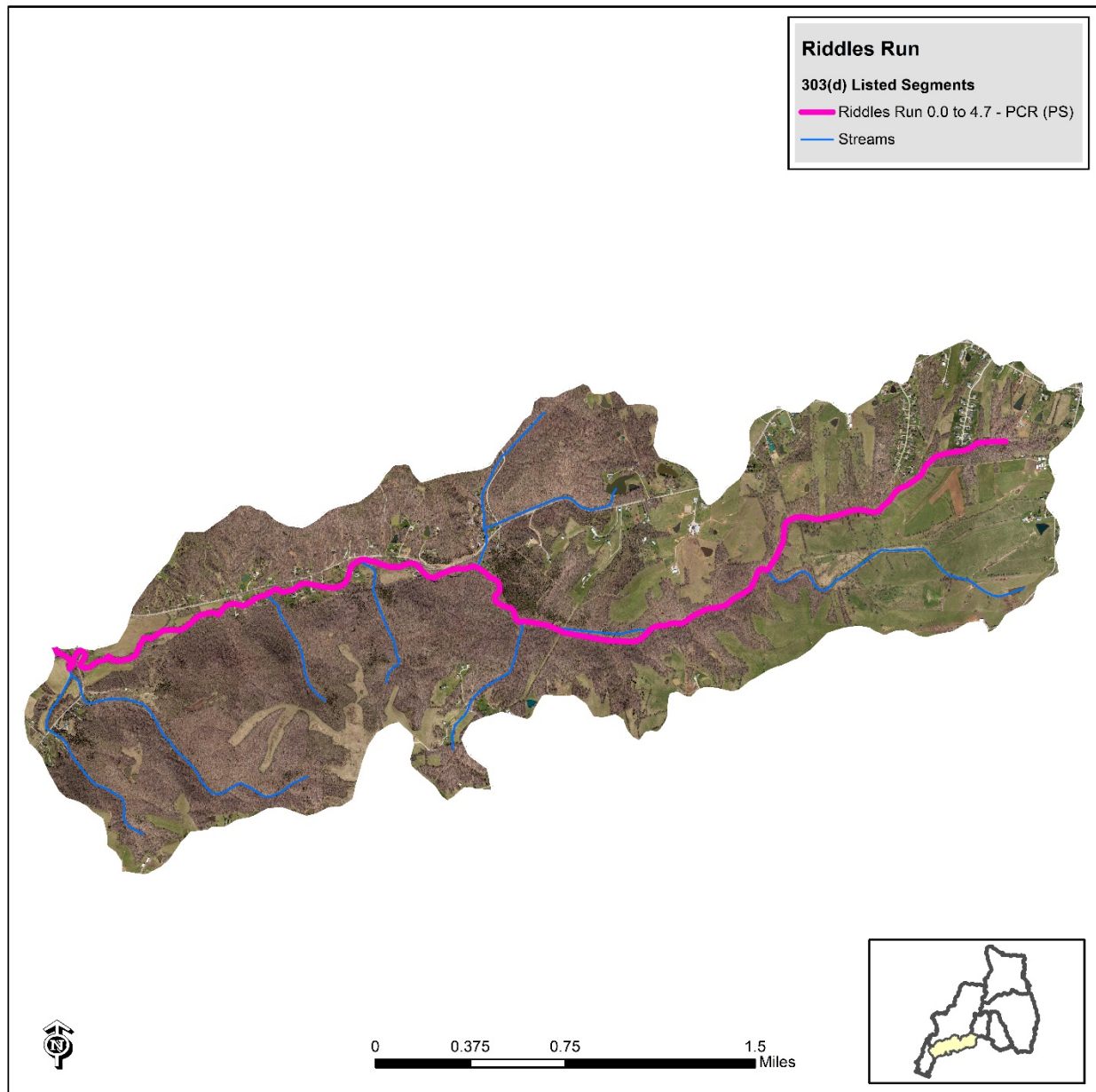


Figure 2.6: Riddles Run Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.6 Riddles Run Subwatershed Implementation

BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR	a) Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	No information for this reporting period
	b) Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings	a) Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation	No information for this reporting period
	b) Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes	
	c) Plant vegetation along the stream banks	
3. Conservation of Open Areas	a) Continue to promote conservation of forested lands, particularly those that currently serve as riparian buffer zones	No information for this reporting period
	b) Conduct meeting with local conservation groups regarding efforts to identify potential properties for conservation	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
4. Onsite Wastewater Improvement	a) Secure 319(h) funding for septic education and improvements	No information for this reporting period
	b) Notify Landowners of Septic Assistance program through community meetings and mailings	
	c) Collect and process landowner assistance applications	
	d) Conduct onsite inspections to determine septic condition and appropriate fix if needed	
	e) Implement identified fix	
	f) Track all inspections, including location, condition of septic and implementation	
	g) Continue landowner education	

Table 2.6 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
5. Agriculture Improvement	Continued coordination and implementation of the NRCS NWQI	Information regarding the initial efforts of the NRCS NWQI is included in the National Water Quality Initiative 2019 Report (Appendix A)

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife, FILO – Fee In Lieu of

2.7 Middle and Lower Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed

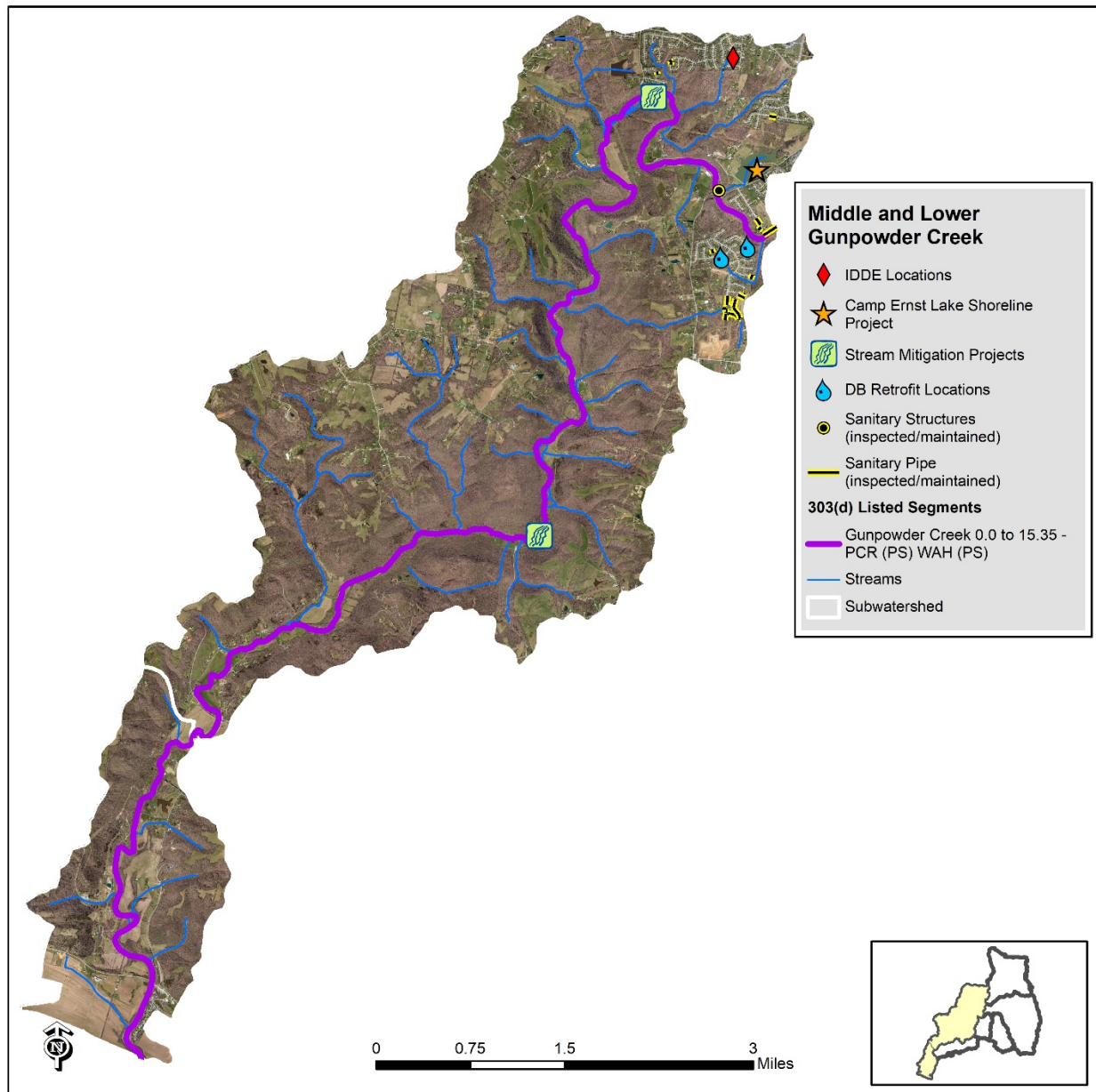


Figure 2.7.1: Middle and Lower Gunpowder Creek Subwatershed Implementation

Table 2.7 Middle and Lower Gunpowder Creek Implementation






BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
Watershed Plan (Adapted from Table 6-6 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan)		
1. Coordination with NKU FILO Program and KDFWR 	a) Coordinate projects with NKU and KDFWR	Two sites have been selected within this subwatershed and the projects are in the concept planning phase. One project is located on the YMCA property and will include restoration of 11,600 ft on the mainstem of Gunpowder Creek and 2,900 ft on a tributary. The second project is located on the Camp Michaels property and will include restoration of 11,600 ft on the mainstem of Gunpowder Creek and 89,400 ft on adjoining tributaries. (Figure 2.72)
	b) Provide guidance on best project locations	
2. Riparian Plantings 	a) Identify areas along the stream corridor that are lacking vegetation.	BCCDKY partnered with Boone County Parks to use coir logs to stabilize approximately 160 linear feet of shoreline at Camp Ernst Lake. (Figure 2.73)
	b) Facilitate partnerships to promote reforestation, especially along stream riparian zones and on steep slopes.	
	c) Plant vegetation along the stream banks.	
3. Conservation of Open Areas	a) Continue to promote conservation of forested lands, particularly those that currently serve as riparian buffer zones.	No information for this reporting period
	b) Conduct meeting with local conservation groups regarding efforts to identify potential properties for conservation.	
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
4. Onsite Wastewater Improvement	a) Secure 319(h) funding for septic education and improvements	No information for this reporting period
	b) Notify Landowners of Septic Assistance program through community meetings and mailings	
	c) Collect and process landowner assistance applications	
	d) Conduct onsite inspections to determine septic condition and appropriate fix if needed	
	e) Implement identified fix	

Table 2.7 cont.		
BMP Category	Action Items	Progress Report Updates (Sept 2019 - Aug 2020)
PCR Supplement (Adapted from Appendix A of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Supplement)		
4. Onsite Wastewater Improvement (cont.)	f) Track all inspections, including location, condition of septic and implementation g) Continue landowner education	No information for this reporting period
5. Agriculture Improvement	Continued coordination and implementation of the NRCS NWQI	Information regarding the initial efforts of the NRCS NWQI is included in the National Water Quality Initiative 2019 Report (Appendix A)
6. IDDE Program Implementation 	a) Continue to implement the MS4 IDDE programs in SD1 and Florence Storm Water Service Areas. b) Document and track eliminated illicit discharges associated with wastewater (failing septs, broken laterals, etc.)	(6a) Implementation of the MS4 IDDE programs in the SD1 Service Area continued. (6b) One illicit was found and eliminated in the SD1 Service Area. The Middle and Lower Gunpowder Subwatersheds are outside of the Florence Service Area.
7. Sanitary Improvements 	a) Continue to implement the CMOM program in the SD1 service area b) Document all repairs, improvements and upgrades for the sanitary system within the watershed.	(7a,b) Over 5,300 feet of sanitary sewer and 1 sanitary structure were inspected and/or maintained during this reporting period.
8. Other 	Implementation not identified above	SD1 conducted a detention basin analysis project to identify and prioritize existing detention basins for retrofits. Two basins were selected in this sub-watershed for retrofits (Figure 2.7.4). See Appendix D: Kassady Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 040.16.0523) and Rurel Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 040.16.0524) for details. These retrofits will be completed before the end of 2020.

*GCWI - Gunpowder Creek Watershed Initiative, BCCD - Boone County Conservation District, NKHD - Northern Kentucky Health Department, NRCS - Natural Resources Conservation Service, SD1 - Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky, NKU - Northern Kentucky University, KDFWR- Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife, FILO – Fee In Lieu of, CMOM - Capacity, Management, Operations and Maintenance



Figure 2.7.2 Gunpowder Creek Mainstem at Camp Michaels



Figure 2.7.3 Shore Stabilization at Camp Ernst Lake



Figure 2.7.4 Kassady Court Detention Basin

3.0 Monitoring

Monitoring the health of impaired streams involves measuring and tracking trends in stream conditions over time to show improvements in water quality and areas in need of new or additional implementation efforts. There are many types of monitoring for assessing overall stream health including water quality monitoring (measures the amount of pollutants in a stream), biological monitoring (identifying populations of macroinvertebrate and fish species to indicate water quality health), and assessing physical features of a stream (such as habitat and erosion). An important component of a TMDL alternative plan is to have a monitoring plan in place to evaluate the effectiveness of implementation efforts so that progress can be demonstrated and adaptive management can be applied where needed to stay on track for achieving water quality standards.

3.1 Monitoring Sites and Events

SD1 has established five long-term monitoring sites within the Gunpowder Creek Watershed (Figure 3.1).

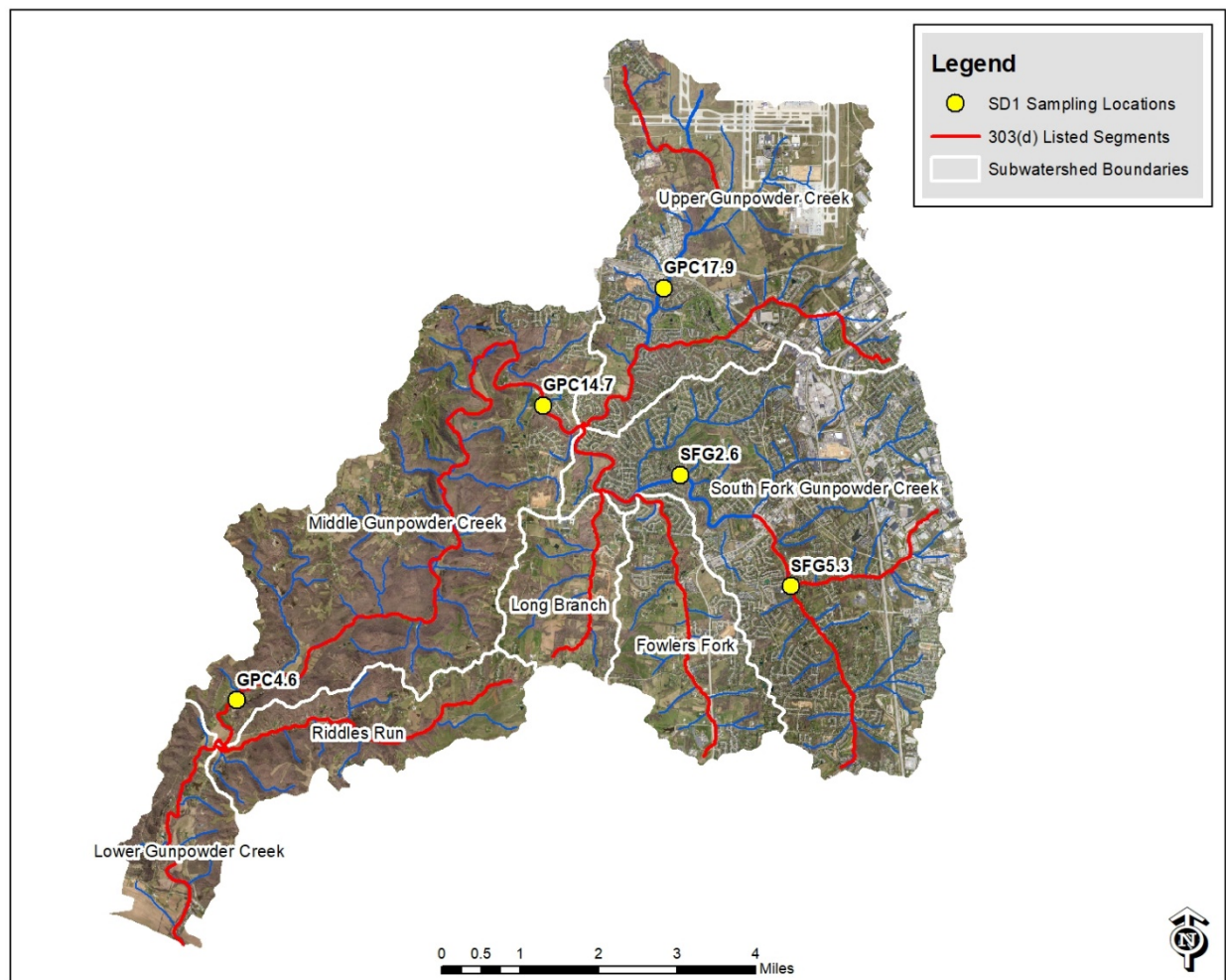


Figure 3.1 SD1 Sampling locations in Gunpowder Creek

All five sites are part of SD1's monitoring network within the SD1 West Basin monitoring cycle. These sites are sampled once during dry weather conditions (i.e. no precipitation in watershed 72 hours prior to event and prevailing dry weather conditions throughout event) between May – Oct every four years. Water quality assessments (bacteria, nutrients, solids, velocity measurements and field chemistry) are conducted at all five sites. Biological surveys, including macroinvertebrate and habitat assessments are conducted at four sites. Rapid stream stability assessments are conducted at four sites.

One site (GPC 14.7) is part of SD1's ambient monitoring network. This site is sampled twelve times between March through November on an annual basis. Sampling dates are established at the beginning of the season and may include samples collected under various weather and flow conditions. The water quality monitoring at this location includes the assessment of in-stream pollutant levels of bacteria, nutrients and solids. Field chemistry (DO, pH, temperature, conductivity and turbidity) is collected during each event. A USGS stream gage is located at this site, which provides stream flow data (gage height and discharge) in 15 minutes intervals. A full hydromodification survey is also conducted on an annual basis at GPC 14.7, which includes the assessment of stream channel alterations caused by changes in hydrology and include quantitative measurements to determine cross-sections and profiles. Table 3.1.1 provides a summary of the monitoring events.

Table 3.1.1 Summary of SD1 Monitoring in Gunpowder Creek Watershed

2019 SD1 West Basin Monitoring Locations	Type of Monitoring (1 sample collected between May - Oct every 4 years)			
	Water Quality	Macroinvertebrates	Total Habitat	Hydromodification*
Site ID				
SFG 5.3	X	X	X	X
SFG 2.6	X	X	X	X
GPC 17.9	X	X	X	X
GPC 14.7	X	X	X	X
GPC 4.6	X			
2019 Ambient Monitoring Locations	Type of Monitoring (12 samples collected between March - Nov every year)			
	Water Quality	Macroinvertebrates	Total Habitat	Hydromodification*
Site ID				
GPC 14.7	X			X

* A full hydromodification assessment will be performed every year at GPC 14.7. A rapid hydromodification assessment is performed at the other identified locations every 4 years.

SD1 conducts all monitoring in accordance with established monitoring plans and standard operating procedures (SOPs). Table 3.1.2 provides a reference to the plans, which are included in Appendix B.

Table 3.1.2 Monitoring Plans and Procedures

SD1 Monitoring Plans and Procedures	
Document Title	Monitoring Type
Ambient Sampling Field Monitoring & Sampling Plan for Northern Kentucky Watersheds	Water Quality (Ambient)
Base Flow Characterization - Field Monitoring & Sampling Plan for Northern Kentucky Watersheds - Phase 3	Water Quality (West Basin)
Standard Operating Procedures for Field Procedures for Macroinvertebrate Collections	Macroinvertebrates & Total Habitat
Standard Operating Procedures for Hydromodification Field Surveys	Hydromodification (Full Assessment)
Technical Memorandum: Regionally-Calibrated Channel Stability Index for Northern Kentucky Streams	Hydromodification (Rapid Assessment)

3.2 Monitoring Results and Analysis

Building upon the results provided in the previous progress report, the ambient water quality monitoring results for site GPC 14.7 are included in this progress report. This includes results collected through August 2020. In addition, the available results from the 2019 SD1 West Basin Monitoring for the five sites in the watershed are included as well.

Water quality standards are from Kentucky Administrative Regulations defined in 401 KAR 10:031. All other parameters included in this analysis are compared to water quality benchmarks provided by DOW in the [Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan](#) Benchmark Recommendations for Nutrient Parameters (February 2012) and the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan Benchmark Recommendations for Non-Nutrient Parameters (February 2012) documents. According to the Total Suspended Solids (TSS) and Turbidity benchmarks values provided by DOW, the values should only be compared to normal April-October flow conditions and not high flow events or winter samples. Due to this limitation, only April-October dry weather condition samples were used for those parameters.

The results and analyses are summarized below.

Ambient Monitoring Results

Table 3.2.1 provides a summary of the ambient monitoring results for site GPC 14.7. The table includes the number of samples analyzed for each weather condition (#), the average of those sample results (AVG) and the percent of the samples that exceeded the water quality standard or water quality benchmark (%EX). The entire data set for the results in Table 3.2.1 is included in Appendix C.

The data are compiled according to weather conditions. The methodology defined in Chapter 3 of the Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan was used to classify the samples. Sampling events with greater than 0.7" rain within 48 hours are classified as wet, events with less than 0.01" rain within seven days are classified as "Dry7" and all others are classified as dry. There was only one sample collected under Dry7 conditions (09/10/2019), which is included with the Dry events for 2019. For future reporting years, it may be beneficial to evaluate the methodology to classify wet and dry events and consider using the USGS gage discharge data rather than rain events.

Table 3.2.1 Ambient Monitoring Results for Site GPC 14.7

PARAMETERS		TOTAL SUSPENDED SOLIDS (TSS)*			TURBIDITY*			TOTAL PHOSPHORUS (TP)			Nitrate-Nitrite-N			TKN			DISSOLVED OXYGEN (DO)			pH			SPECIFIC CONDUCTANCE (SC)			ESCHERICHIA COLI (E.COLI)**		
Units		mg/L			NTU			mg/L			mg/L			mg/L			mg/L			su			µS/cm			mpn/100mL		
Benchmark		<7.25			<8.3			<0.08			<0.3			<0.3									<522.5					
Standard																	> 4			6-9						<240		
		#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX	#	AVG	%EX
2018	ALL	5	4.14	20	5	6.1	40	12	0.19	92	12	0.75	75	12	0.61	100	10	9	0	9	8	0	11	665.5	73	9	2228	78
	WET	0			0			5	0.23	100	5	0.92	80	5	0.72	100	4	9	0	3	8	0	4	561.3	25	4	4368	100
	DRY	5	4.14	20	5	6.1	40	7	0.17	86	7	0.63	71	7	0.53	100	6	10	0	6	8	0	7	725.0	100	5	517	60
2019	ALL	8	4.57	13	7	7.43	43	10	0.14	70	10	0.57	40	10	0.51	90	10	10	0	10	8	0	10	600.8	80	7	341	41
	WET	0			0			0			0			0			0			0			0			0		
	DRY	8	4.57	13	7	7.43	43	10	0.14	70	10	0.57	40	10	0.51	90	10	10	0	10	8	0	10	600.8	80	7	341	41
2020	ALL	4	32.5	100	4	47.5	75	6	0.24	100	6	0.40	67	6	0.79	100	6	8	0	6	8	0	6	491.9	33	6	4663	83
	WET	0			0			2	0.29	100	2	0.45	100	2	1.04	100	2	9	0	2	8	0	2	401.9	50	2	12,444	100
	DRY	4	32.5	100	4	47.4	75	4	0.22	100	4	0.37	50	4	0.67	100	4	8	0	4	8	0	4	536.9	25	4	772	75

* Only samples collected between April – Oct, excluding high flow events, were used for comparison to the benchmarks

** Only samples collected between May – Oct were used for comparison to the standard

Ambient Monitoring Analysis – Water Quality

The following figures provide a comparison of the percent of samples exceeding the standard or established benchmark for the complete 2018, 2019 and partial 2020 sample results. Figure 3.2.1 represents all events with the total number of sampling events included in parentheses above the bar.

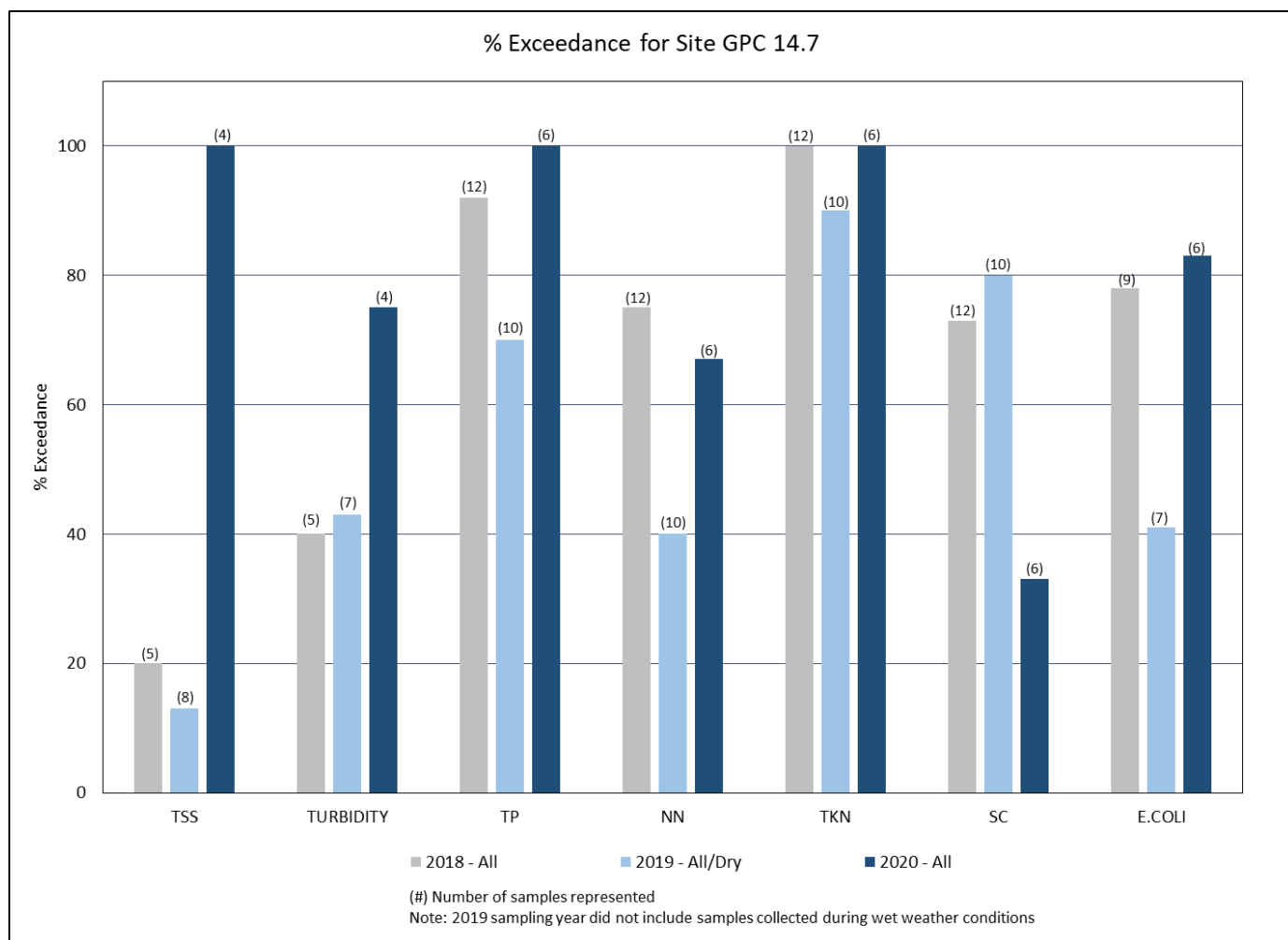


Figure 3.2.1 Comparison of the percent of samples exceeding the established standard or benchmark for all conditions

All parameters show an increase in the percent exceedance between the 2019 and 2020 years except for Specific Conductance. As noted above, the 2020 results only include the events through August 2020, so fewer events are represented in the 2020 year. The comparison between the 2018 and 2020 years show less of a change except for TSS and Turbidity, which had a large increase in both the overall average and percent exceedances.

Figure 3.2.2 represents the dry weather events. Again there are fewer events represented in 2020, however the pattern of percent exceedance are similar.

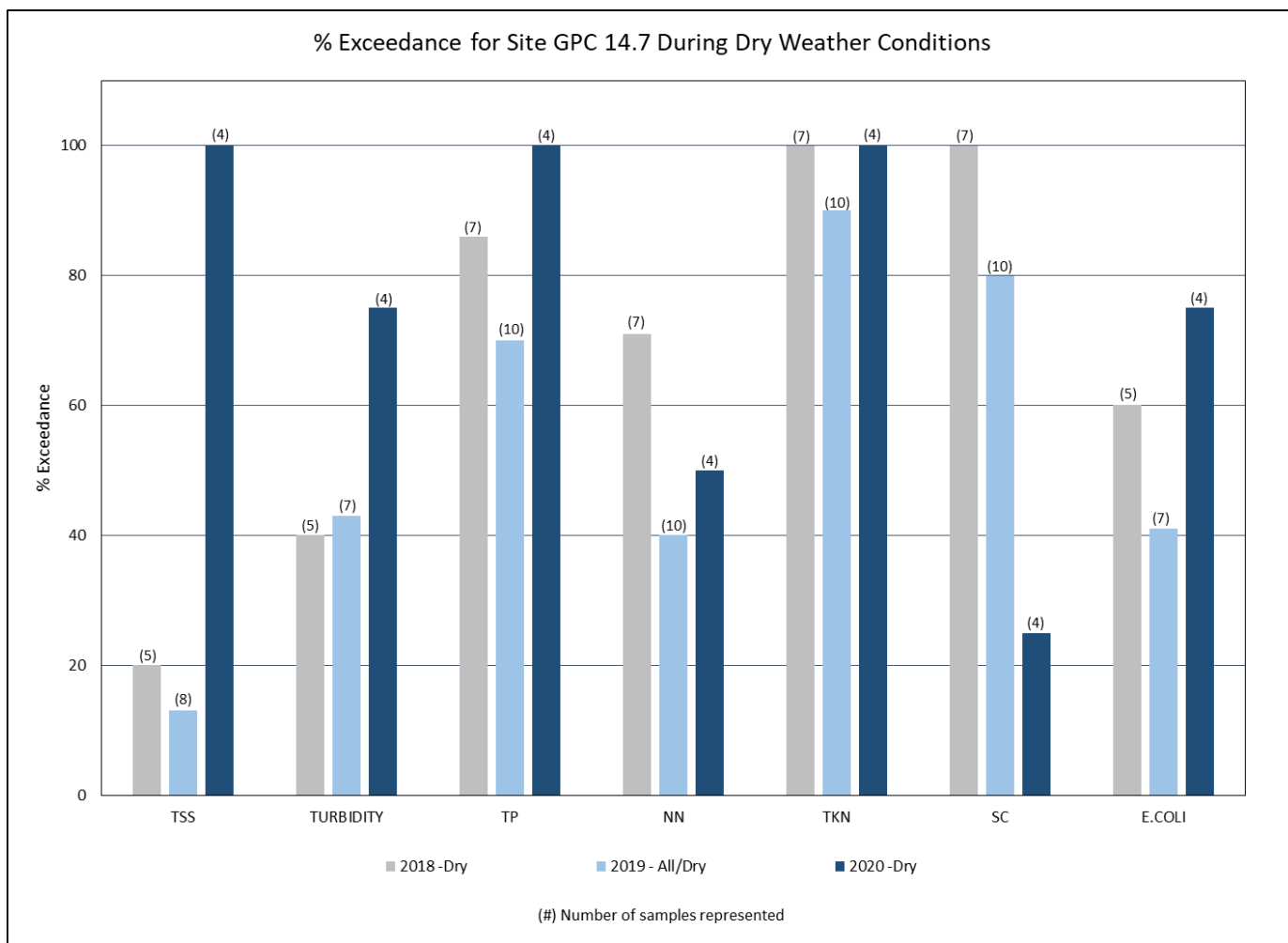


Figure 3.2.2 Comparison of the percent of samples exceeding the established standard or benchmark for dry conditions

Figure 3.2.3 represents the wet weather events for 2018 and 2020 only, since there were no wet weather conditions in 2019. As noted above benchmarks for TSS and Turbidity do not apply to high flow conditions and were not included in the wet weather comparisons. All events show a high percent exceedance across both years except for Specific Conductance.

Although the 2020 data reflect an increase of percent exceedance, it would be best to conduct a more in-depth analysis of the data following the completion of the 2020 sampling year. SD1 would like to discuss this approach with DOW and determine the most appropriate methods for classifying wet and dry events and key factors to evaluate for trends associated with the parameters.

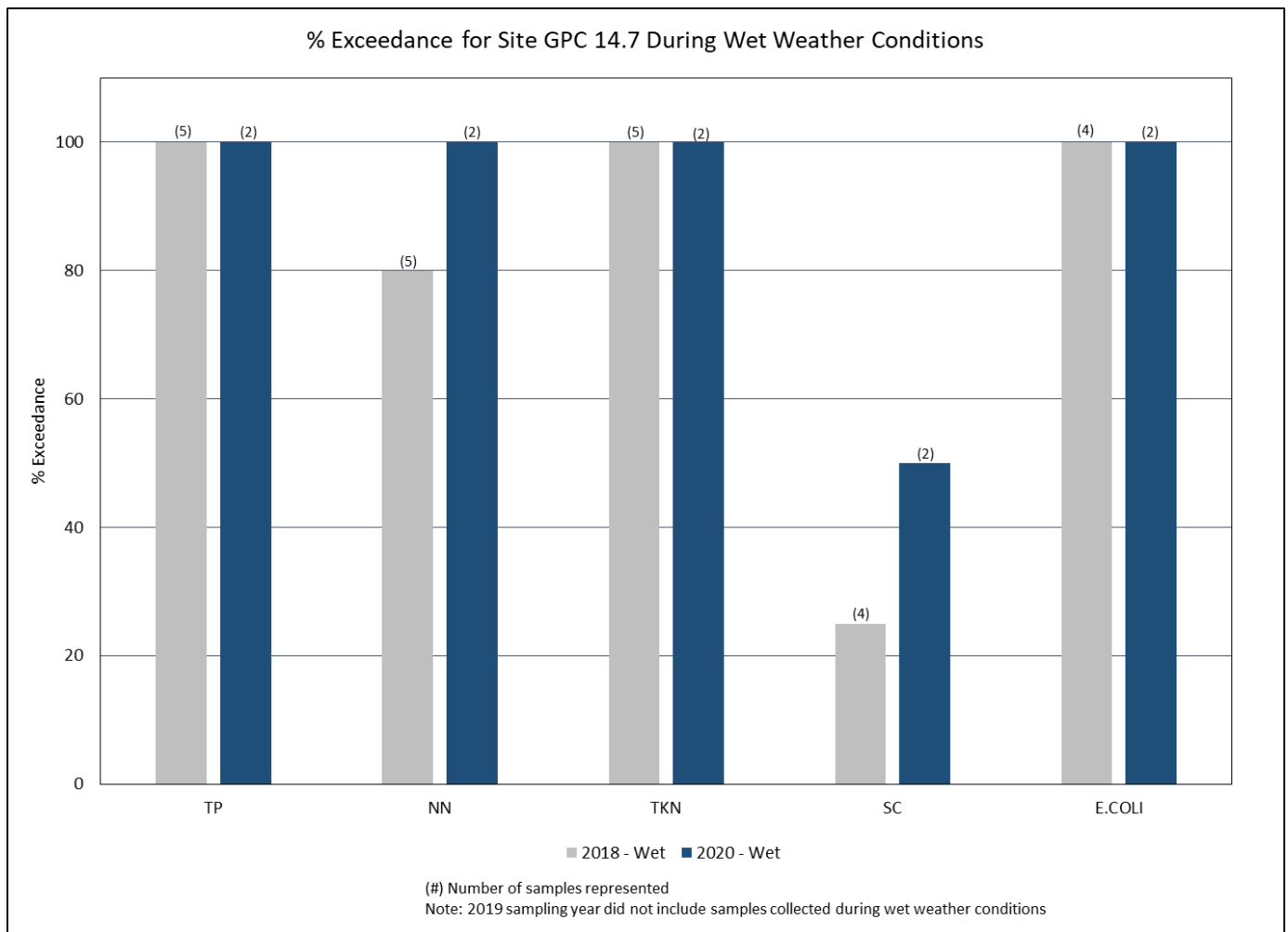


Figure 3.2.3 Comparison of the percent of samples exceeding the established standard or benchmark for wet conditions

Ambient Monitoring Analysis – Hydromodification

The full hydromodification assessment was conducted at site GPC 14.7 but the analysis of the results is not complete at this time. This information will be included in future progress reports.

West Basin Monitoring Results

As noted above, SD1 samples the Gunpowder sites in the West Basin (Table 3.1.1) once during dry weather conditions between May – Oct every four years.

Tables 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4 and 3.2.5 provide the results of the 2019 West Basin monitoring for these sites. The entire data set for the 2019 results are included in Appendix C.

Table 3.2.2 2019 West Basin Water Quality Monitoring Results for Gunpowder Creek Sites

Site ID	Date	Time	Field Readings						Analytical Results							
			Temp	pH	D.O.	Sp. Cond.	Turbidity	Flow	E. coli	Nitrate-Nitrite as N	Total Phosphorous	TKN	NH ₃ as N	Orthophosphate	TSS	CBOD ₅
		24- HR	(C)		(mg/L)	(µS/cm)	(NTU)	(CFS)	CFU/ 100ml	mg/L	mg/L	mg/L	mg/L	mg/L	mg/L	mg/L
SFG5.3	8/5/19	12:45	26.8	8.06	11.18	684	0.4	0.13	296	0.07	0.083	0.54	<0.079	0.066	2	<2
SFG2.6	8/5/19	13:15	26.6	8.06	9.16	701	0.7	*	192	0.06	0.072	0.50	<0.079	0.061	2	<2
GPC17.9	8/6/19	13:00	23.9	8.01	8.94	996	11.7	0.05	200	0.13	0.155	0.61	<0.079	0.112	8	<2
GPC14.7	8/6/19	12:50	26.3	8.20	9.96	651	4.5	0.21	52	0.14	0.093	0.58	<0.079	0.068	4	<2
GPC4.6	8/6/19	11:20	24.6	7.84	6.33	444	17.5	*	196	0.06	0.107	0.54	<0.079	0.062	8	<2

* Visible flow but not measurable with instrument

Table 3.2.3 2019 West Basin Habitat Assessment Results for Gunpowder Creek Sites

Site	Date	Score	Narrative Rating	Stream Type
SFG5.3	7/30/2019	102	Poor	Wadeable
SFG 2.6	7/29/2019	108	Poor	Wadeable
GPC 17.9	6/13/2019	134	Good	Wadeable
GPC 14.7	7/8/2019	143	Good	Wadeable

Table 3.2.4 2019 West Basin Macroinvertebrate Bioassessment Index (MBI) Assessment Results for Gunpowder Creek Sites

Site	Date	MBI Score	MBI Rating	Stream Type
SFG5.3	7/30/2019	41.53	Fair	Wadeable
SFG 2.6	7/29/2019	52	Fair	Wadeable
GPC 17.9	6/13/2019	53.68	Fair	Wadeable
GPC 14.7	7/8/2019	59.73	Fair	Wadeable

Table 3.2.5 2019 West Basin Rapid Hydromodification Assessment Results for Gunpowder Creek Sites

Site	Date	Stability Index Score	Stability Index Threshold
SFG5.3	8/7/2019	1.85	Unstable - High Risk
SFG 2.6	7/29/2019	4	Medium Risk
GPC 17.9	6/13/2019	2.4	Medium Risk
GPC 14.7	8/7/2019	5.1	Medium Risk

West Basin Monitoring Analysis – Water Quality

As noted above, SD1 collects samples every four years for these site. For comparison, the following figures include the results of the key parameters from 2019 as well as the 2015 and 2010 cycles. The number above each bar indicates the result for that sample and the dashed line represents the water quality standard or benchmark.

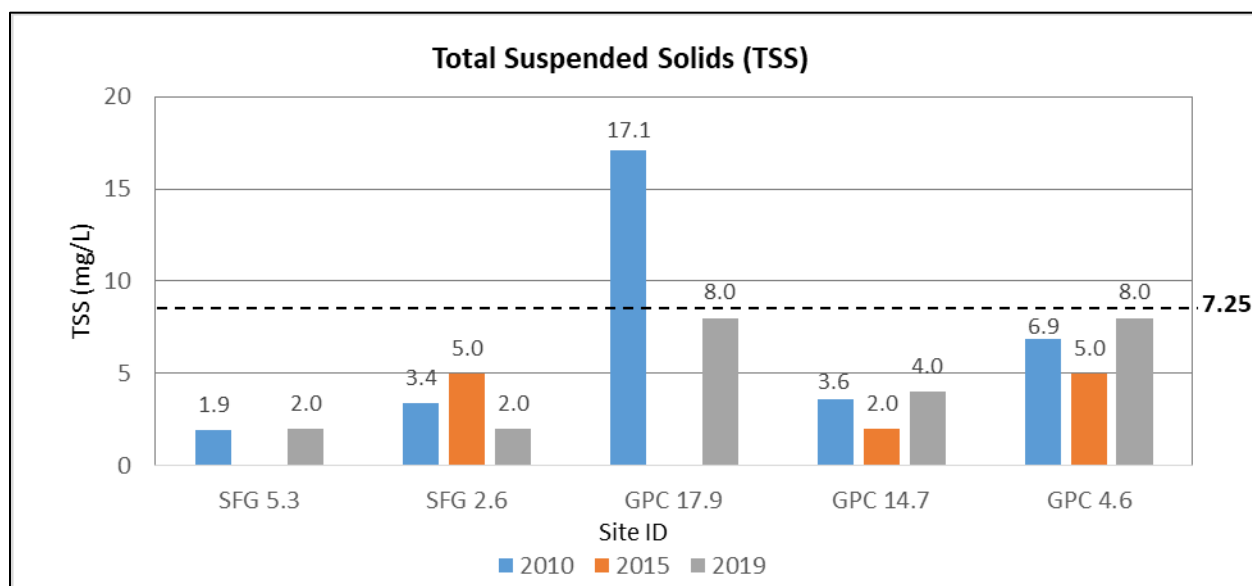


Figure 3.2.4 Comparison of Total Suspended Solids across basin cycles (Note: TSS measurements were below the detection limit for sites GPC 5.3 and GPC 17.9 in 2015)

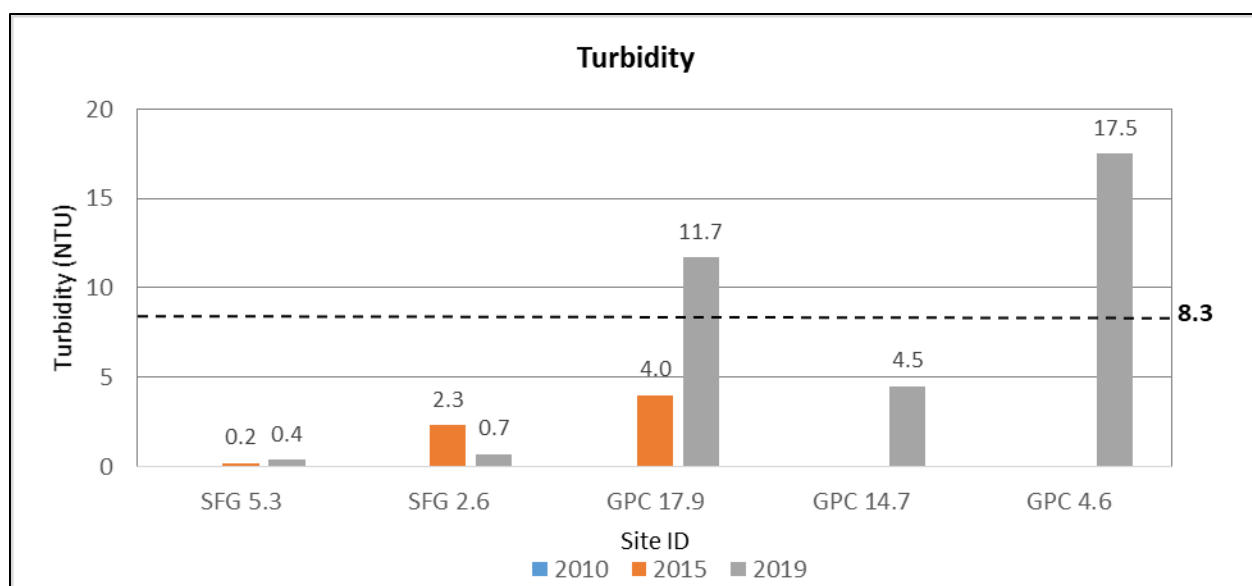


Figure 3.2.5 Comparison of Turbidity across basin cycles (Note: Turbidity measurements are not included for 2010 and sites GPC 14.7 and GPC 4.6 in 2015 due to instrumentation issues)

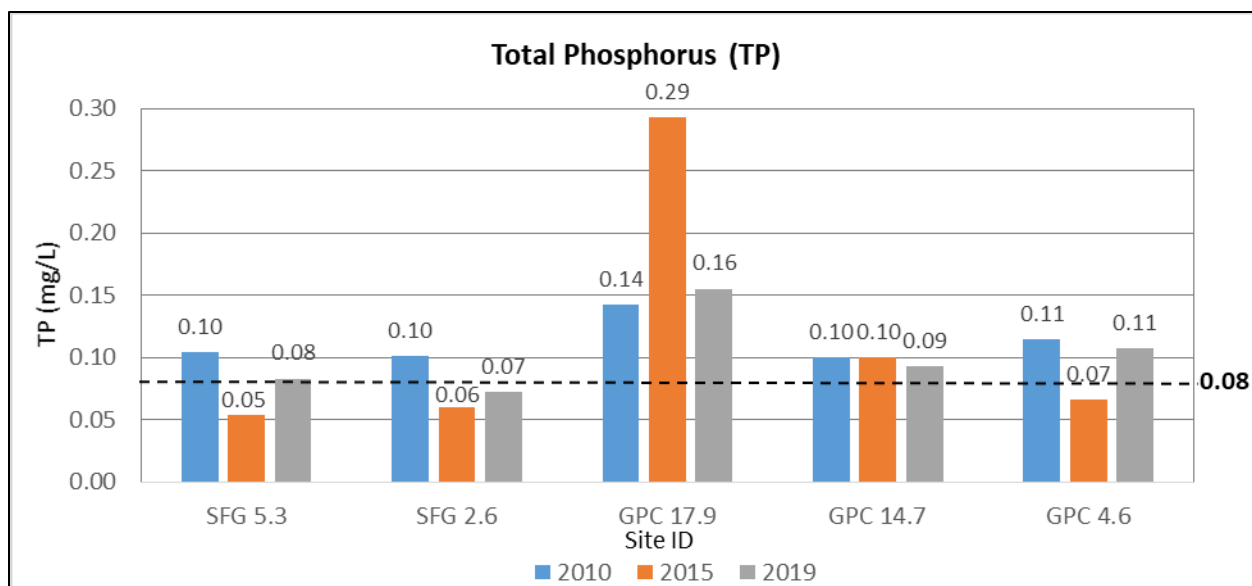


Figure 3.2.6 Comparison of Total Phosphorus across basin cycles

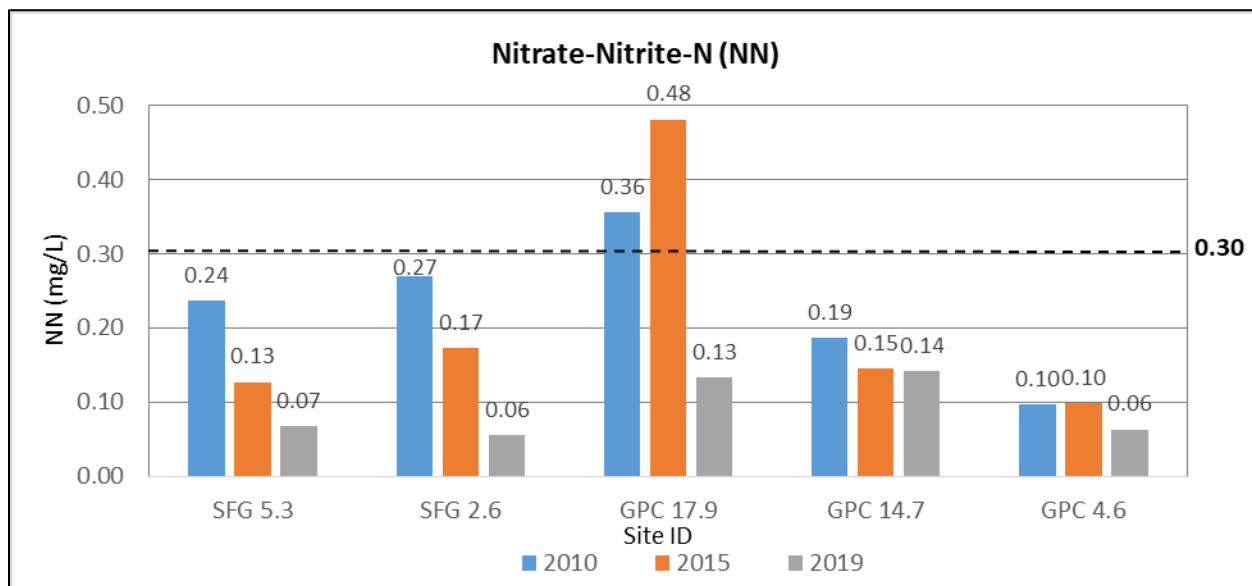


Figure 3.2.7 Comparison of Nitrate-Nitrite-N across basin cycles

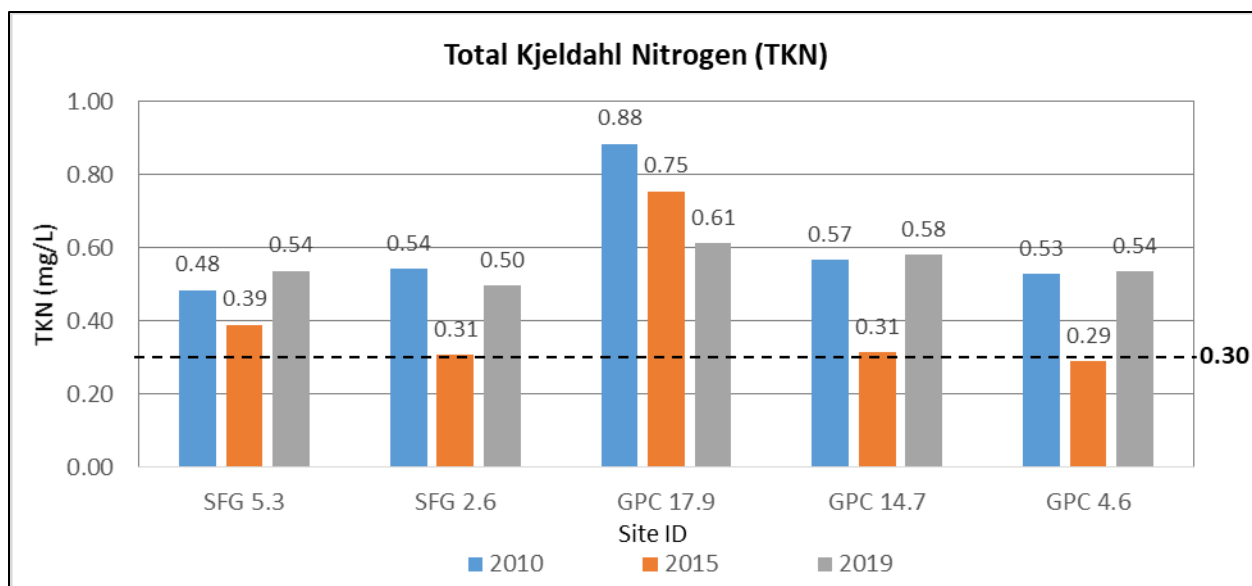


Figure 3.2.8 Comparison of Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen across basin cycles

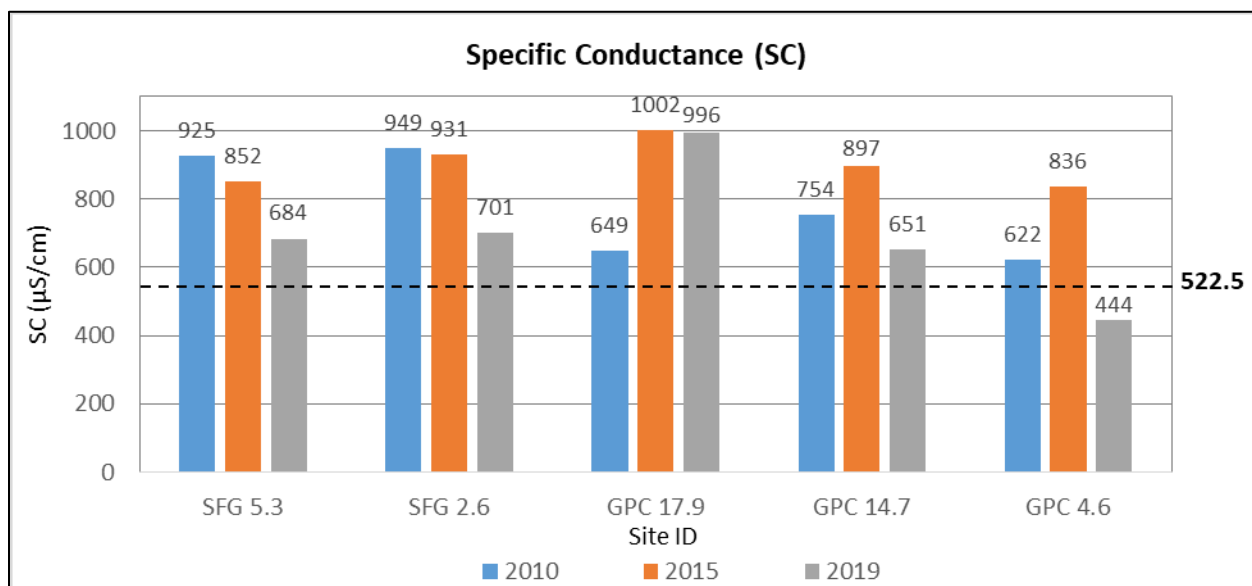


Figure 3.2.9 Comparison of Specific Conductance across basin cycles

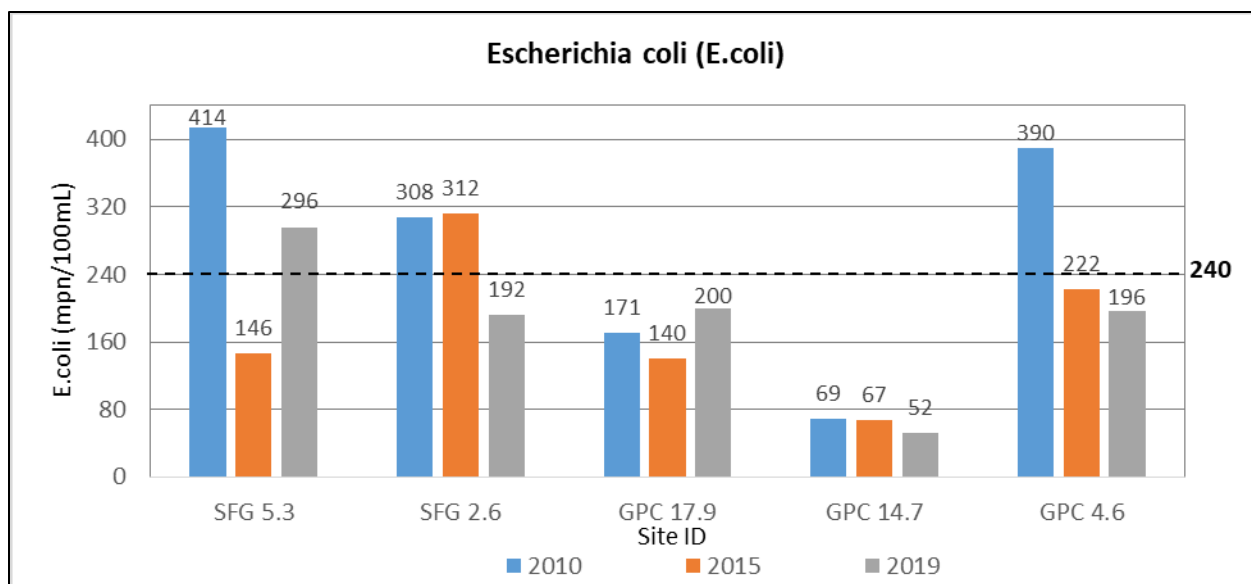


Figure 3.2.10 Comparison of Escherichia coli across basin cycles

Overall each site shows some exceedances of the water quality standard or benchmark for a number of the parameters, with site GPC 17.9 showing elevated levels compared to the other sites for most parameters. However due to the limited number of samples, one sample per site per year, it's difficult to determine specific trends from this data set. Similarly to the ambient monitoring data set, SD1 would also like to discuss the appropriate method for analyzing this data with DOW for future progress reports.

West Basin Monitoring Analysis – Habitat and Macroinvertebrate Analysis

The following figures include the results of the 2019 cycle as well as the 2015 and 2010 cycles. The narrative habitat assessment ratings are based on the narrative scoring criteria for the Bluegrass Bioregion in the Methods for Assessing Habitat in Wadeable Waters (March 2011). The narrative macroinvertebrate bioassessment index (MBI) assessment ratings are based on the narrative scoring criteria for the Bluegrass Bioregion in the Kentucky Macroinvertebrate Bioassessment Index: Derivation of Regional Narrative Ratings for Assessing Wadeable and Headwater Streams (September 2003).

Overall most sites show an improvement with higher scores for the habitat and MBI assessments. Site GPC 17.9 and GPC 14.7 both show a narrative criteria improvement from poor or fair in 2010 and 2015 to good in 2019. Site GPC 2.6 did show a drop in the habitat score and narrative criterion from fair to poor compared to the previous years. This was due to the removal of riparian vegetation for a powerline easement at the time of the assessment. Since the assessment, vegetation has been reestablished, which will likely result in an improved score for future years.

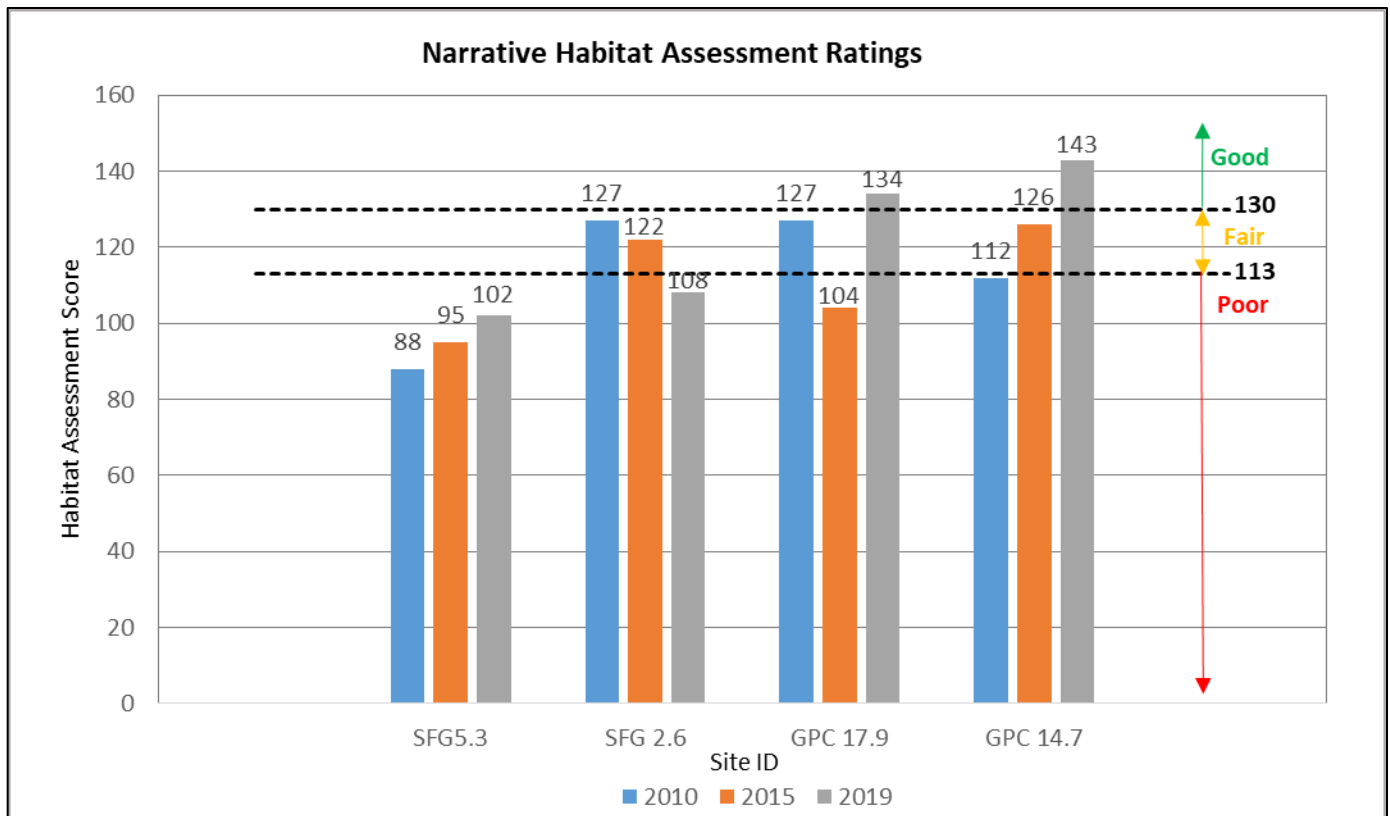


Figure 3.2.11 Comparison of narrative habitat assessment ratings across basin cycles

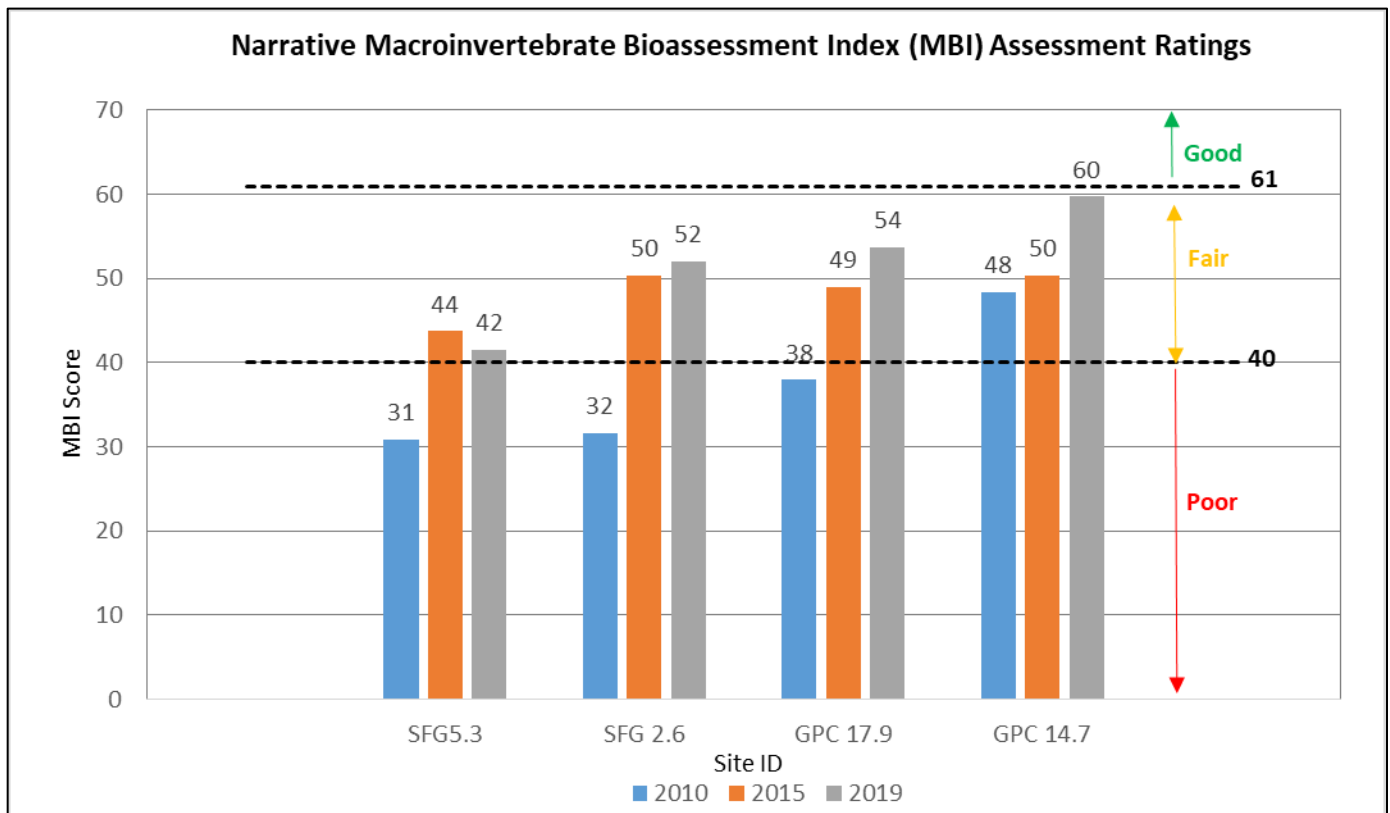


Figure 3.2.12 Comparison of MBI assessment ratings across basin cycles

West Basin Monitoring Analysis – Hydromodification

2019 was the first year that Rapid Hydromodification Assessments were conducted at each of the four sites in the basin cycle. The results in Table 3.2.5 will be used in future reporting years for a comparison. The narrative description of the Stability Index Threshold is based on the methodology outlined in the Documentation for Hydromodification Decision Tree Mapping memo, which is included in Appendix E.

3.4 Future Monitoring

At this time, additional monitoring beyond the plan outlined in Section 3.1 has not been determined. As noted above, SD1 would like to meet with DOW to discuss the methods for analyzing the current data and suggestions for future monitoring.

Appendix A: National Water Quality Initiative 2019 Report



2019

National Water Quality Initiative



J.T. McMullen

Boone County Conservation District &
Natural Resources Conservation Service

3/19/2019



**The Boone County Conservation District
&
Natural Resources Conservation Service**



**Gunpowder Creek's
National Water Quality Initiative**

Final Report

March 19, 2019

Index

Page 1.....Introduction

Page 3.....Methods and Implementation

Page 5.....Progress and Results

Page 6.....Conclusions and Suggestions

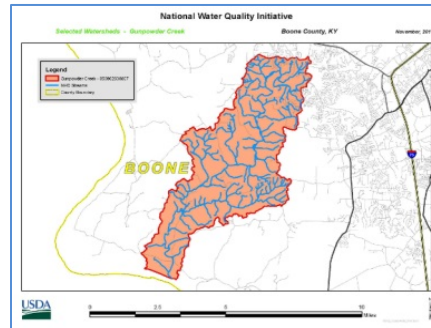
Page 7.....Appendix A

Page 8.....Appendix B

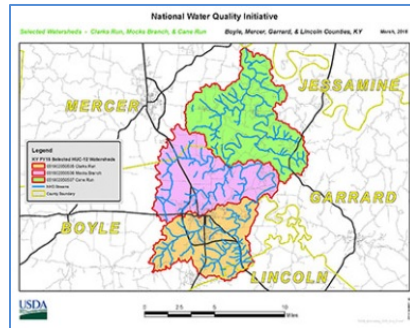
Page 9.....Appendix C

Introduction

Thanks in large part to the development of the EPA-approved Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan, the Boone County Conservation District (BCCDKY) was awarded a grant by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) to implement the 2017 National Water Quality Initiative (NWQI) pilot project for Gunpowder Creek, one of only four projects in the state (see Appendix A). J.T. McMullen was hired as the NWQI Regional Coordinator and began reaching out to landowners in the watershed to inform them about the opportunities available through state and federal cost share programs. These opportunities range in scope and scale, and cover a diverse range of interest, from conservation to agriculture.



Gunpowder Creek Watershed



Lower Kentucky River Watershed

State and Federal Cost Share Programs

- **Environmental Quality Incentives Program (EQIP)** – EQIP is the main cost share program offered by NRCS and has several programs covering hundreds of common agricultural and wildlife conservation practices.
- **State Cost Share Program (SCS)** - Administered by the Kentucky Division of Conservation (DOC), SCS provides similar opportunities as the federal program with slightly less stringent ranking criteria but a lower payment cap.
- **County Agricultural Improvement Program (CAIP)** - Run through the Cooperative Extension Agency, CAIP mirrors SCS in many ways and can cover some practices not covered under the other programs, mainly assistance with barns and other structures, but it has the lowest payment cap.

All of the programs available are application-based and are assessed and ranked by their corresponding agencies in regards to the natural resource concerns that are being addressed. These programs have varied ranking periods (one to four rankings per year, depending on budget) but accept applications year-round. The main intent of the NWQI effort in Gunpowder Creek has been to address the natural resource concerns that have led to the watershed's impaired designation (primarily the result of sediment loading from increasing erosion and agricultural runoff) by increasing awareness of the available cost share programs and by adding weight to the applications submitted within the watershed. As of March 2019, there have been four approved EQIP plans for landowners in the focus area, with an additional five applicants waiting on NRCS' next ranking. An additional two landowners have received approval on applications submitted through the SCS program. (See Appendix B)



Boone County Watershed Map

Methods and Implementation

BCCDKY and the NWQI Regional Coordinator began their efforts by working with Boone County GIS to identify properties meeting the following criteria:

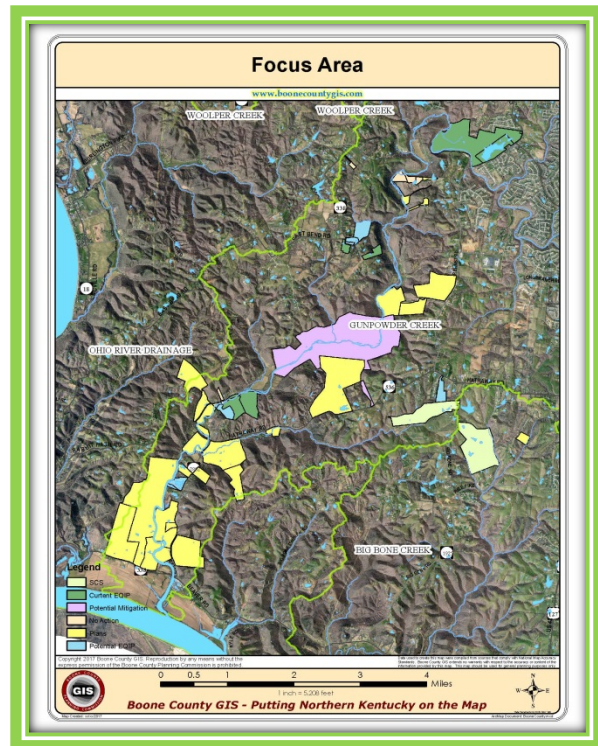
- Agriculturally-zoned to target agricultural waste producers. These properties are typically leading contributors to erosion in the focus area.
- Greater than 10 acres. These properties are most likely to meet NRCS criteria for having the greatest impacts.
- Located in identified focus area: properties downstream of the Camp Ernst bridge, south of Camp Ernst Lake.
 - ❖ Properties above this area in the watershed are mostly non-agricultural, industrial, or suburban. BCCDKY, along with SD1, and other partners, are working to address storm water infrastructure in efforts to reduce erosion in these areas in accordance with their Mission and Annual Plan of Work.

This information provided a good starting point and produced a list of approximately 250 landowners for consideration.

Within the first few months of the program, hundreds of landowners were contacted through a number of marketing and outreach techniques. Several series of directed mail-outs were conducted for a broad scale awareness campaign and several articles were submitted to the County's quarterly newsletter, *What's Happening*. Efforts were also made to identify local agricultural organizations, such as the Northern Kentucky Horse Network and the Boone County Cattlemen's Association; -the NWQI Regional Coordinator participated in several tradeshows and conferences. These events have proven to be been the most productive in terms of landowners seeking field visits and conservation plans and led to a number of the applications received.

BCCDKY was also vital in letting landowners know that the NWQI program was in effect and several of the initial contacts were with landowners already working with the District. Word of mouth is a big part of farming communities and the connections that the District had made prior to the NWQI program proved integral in helping to get things underway.

The NWQI Regional Coordinator conducted field visits to assess landowner objectives and natural resource concerns and documented any necessary information needed to complete a landowner's goal. Most of these field visits pertained to an interest in cost share programs but sometimes just involved landowners looking for simple suggestions. For landowners wishing to apply for cost share programs, the information collected was used to complete a conservation plan. These plans were developed either in conjunction with NRCS, when a landowner wished to pursue a cost share application, or by BCCDKY in cases where recommendations were requested that had no options through cost share programs or no wish to pursue them. The plans included maps and job sheets that detailed all of the relevant technical specifications for the practices in question. Cost share plans also include a cost



Focus Area Map

estimator to show the landowner the up-front dollar amount the program would cover to help them assess the feasibility of what they were proposing to do.

Progress and Results

From these efforts the program has been able to conduct almost 100 field visits, provided conservation planning or recommendations for over 50 landowners, four of which are currently now enrolled in the EQIP program under NWQI, with an additional five awaiting ranking. We also have two landowners with accepted SCS applications we were able to assist with their planning and application submission.

Current NWQI Program Figures

- Total program payout for 2017 contracts: \$26,867
- Potential program payout for 2018 contracts assuming applications are approved: \$39,330
- Riparian area to be reforested: 5.7 acres
- Native grasses to be planted: 3.6 acres
- Pollinator habitat to be planted: 1.2 acres
- Invasive species to be removed: 5.4 acres
- Fence to be installed: 1,950 feet
- Watering facilities to be installed: 2 units
- Livestock pipeline to be installed: 1,725'
- Heavy use area constructed for watering facilities: 2,500 square feet

These numbers do not include the pending applications, but most figures would double, or better, if approved.

Conclusions and Suggestions

The NWQI program has met its goals of making itself known and assisting Boone County's residents in protecting their lands and those downstream. Its promotions have led to an increased interest in cost share programs available across all of the County's and State's watersheds. The goal to inform landowners about the efforts in Gunpowder showed those around them that they had options as well.

Within the focus area, the program has planned for landowners holding cumulatively thousands of acres and miles of stream frontage, with several approved practices being employed to directly affect riparian areas and streambank stability. The agricultural producers implementing new best management practices through the program will address nutrient and bacterial levels as well. The efforts of these landowners and those like them, along with the continued efforts of BCCDKY and NRCS, will lead to accomplishing the ultimate goal of the NWQI program for Gunpowder and declaring the stream no longer impaired.

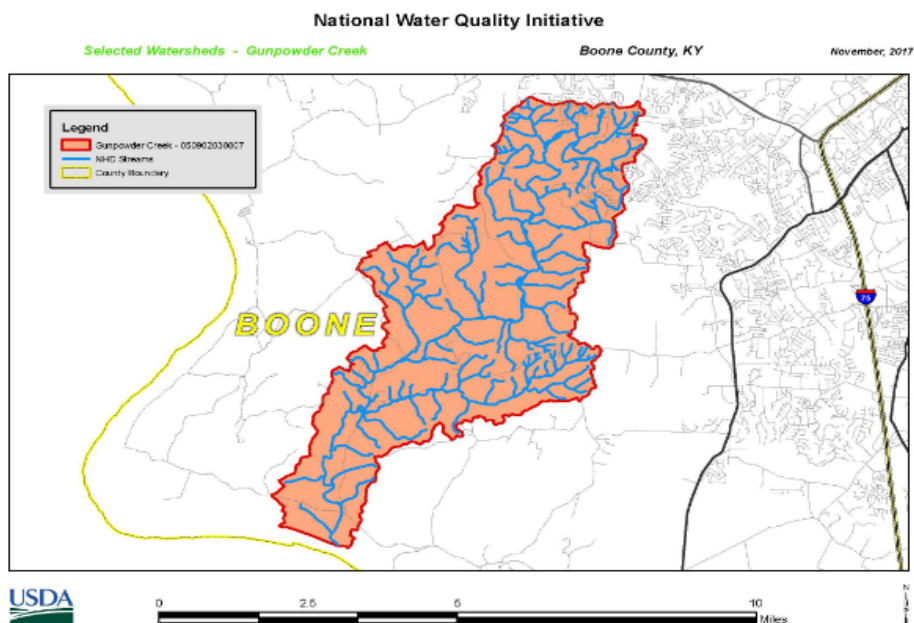
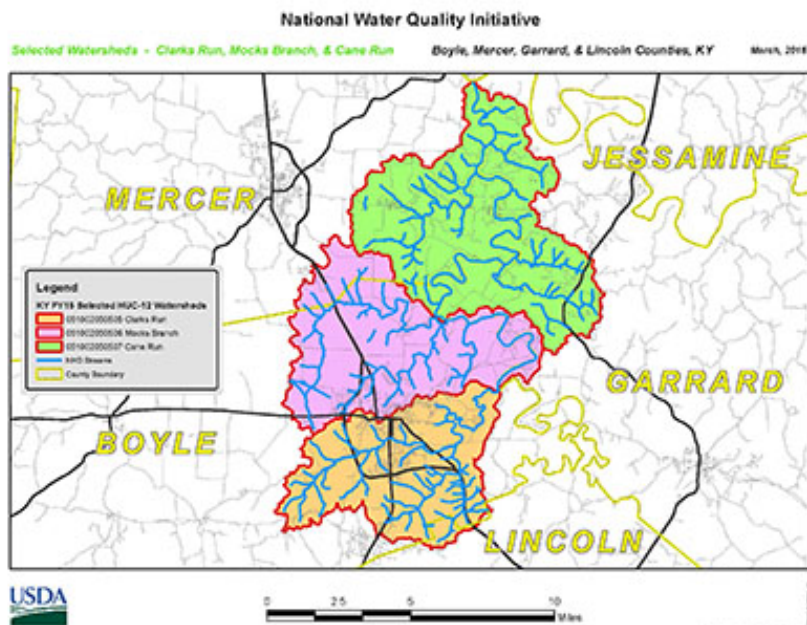
As Boone County continues to develop and move forward, the eventual de-listing of Gunpowder Creek should act as a catalyst to show that the practices recommended and employed work for the landowners, those around them and the county as a whole. Less eroding streambanks

equates to fewer roads and other infrastructure being jeopardized, meaning tax dollars are being spent on new projects and not relegated to fixing recurrent ones. Less nutrient levels and bacterial concentrations unburden water treatment facilities and over time can lead to cleaner water at lower cost.

BCCDKY is currently working to develop a 'One-Stop' portal for the conservation efforts of the County and its residents. This could potentially be a site for landowners to see all options available to them in one place and could help to expedite the process, while easing burden on the agencies associated with the programs involved. It could eventually have application deadlines and parameters for all of the programs available, ways to schedule field visits, and ways to track the progress of submitted applications.

Appendix A

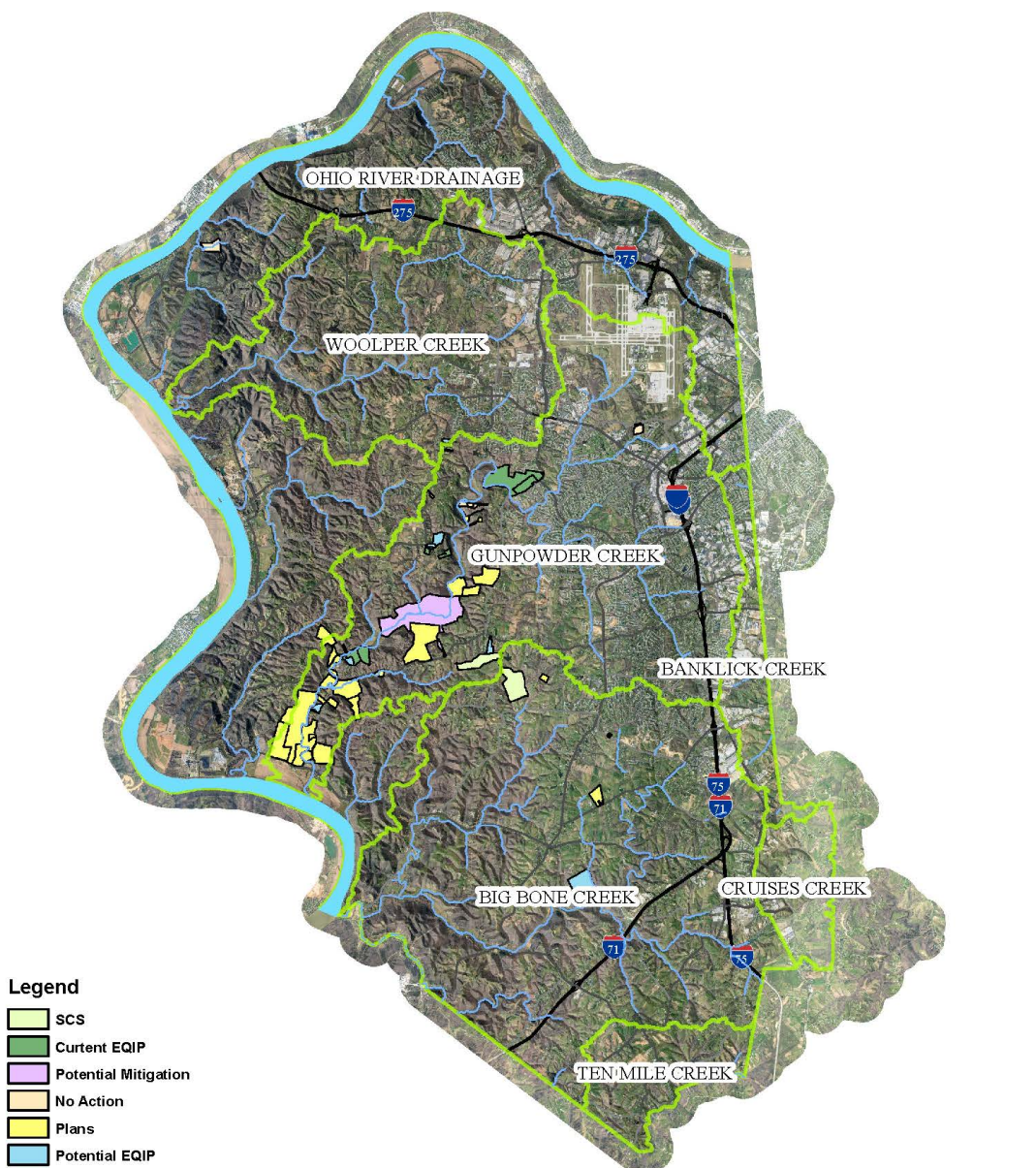
Name of 8-Digit Hydrologic Unit Code (HUC)	Name of 12-Digit HUC	Number 12-Digit HUC
Lower Kentucky	Mocks Branch	051002050506
Lower Kentucky	Clarks Run	051002050505
Lower Kentucky	Cane Run	051002050507
Ohio River	Gunpowder Creek	050902030807



Appendix B

County Overview

www.boonecountygis.com



Copyright 2017 Boone County GIS. Reproduction by any means without the express permission of the Boone County Planning Commission is prohibited.

Data used to create this map were compiled from sources that comply with National Map Accuracy Standards. Boone County GIS extends no warranty with respect to the accuracy or content of the information provided by this map. This map should be used for general planning purposes only.



0 1.5 3 6 9 12 Miles
1 inch = 16,667 feet

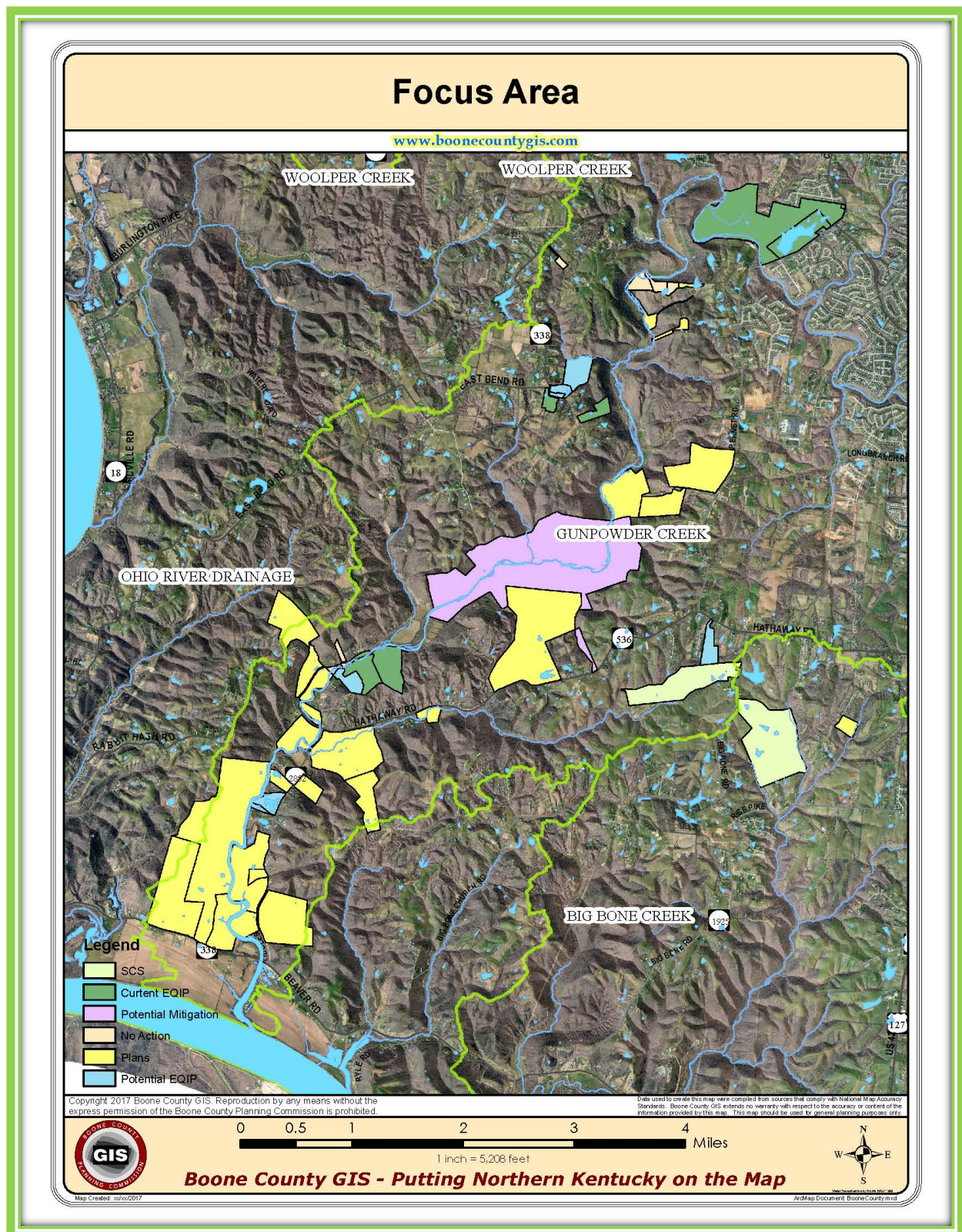


Boone County GIS - Putting Northern Kentucky on the Map

Map Created: 10/10/2017

Map Document: BooneCounty.mxd

Appendix C



Appendix B: Monitoring Plans and SOPs

**AMBIENT SAMPLING
FIELD MONITORING & SAMPLING PLAN
FOR NORTHERN KENTUCKY WATERSHEDS**



Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No.1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Program Overview	2
1.2	Monitoring Team	3
2.	MONITORING AND SAMPLING CRITERIA	4
3.	STREAM CHARACTERIZATION.....	5
3.1	On-Site Water Quality Measurements	6
3.2	Ambient Sampling.....	6
3.3	Summary	9
4.	FIELD MEASUREMENTS	10
5.	SAMPLING HANDLING AND CUSTODY.....	11
5.1	Sample Labeling	11
5.2	Sampling Collection, Handling and Transport	11
5.3	Chain-of-Custody	12
5.4	Field Logs and Records.....	12
5.5	Sample Containers and Preservation.....	13
6.	QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM.....	14
6.1	Training	15
6.2	Field Quality Control	15
6.3	Equipment Cleaning Protocol	15
6.4	QA/QC Samples.....	15
6.4.1	Sample Duplicates.....	16
6.4.2	Method Blanks	16
6.4.3	Field Blanks	17
6.5	Equipment Calibration	17
7.	PROGRAM SAFETY	17
7.1	General Safety Practices	18
7.2	Health Hazards.....	18

FIGURES

Figure 1	Monitoring and Sampling Stations	3
----------	----------------------------------	---

TABLES

Table 1	Team Member Responsibilities	4
Table 2	Ambient Sampling Locations	6
Table 3	Ambient Monitoring Schedule	8
Table 4	Summary of Water Quality Monitoring and Sampling Program	9
Table 5	Summary of Number of Samples to be Collected	9
Table 6	Field Measurements	10
Table 7	Guidelines for Sample Container Preparation and Preservation	14
Table 8	QA/QC Sample Schedule	16
Table 9	Number of QA/QC Samples	16

APPENDICES

Appendix A	Standard Operating Procedures for Field Monitoring and Sampling
Appendix B	Northern KY Sanitation District No. 1 Chain of Custody
Appendix C	Northern KY Sanitation District No. 1 Field Data Sheet

1. INTRODUCTION

Sanitation District No. 1 (SD1) a clean water agency that serves over 30 communities in Campbell, Kenton and Boone Counties, Kentucky, as both the wastewater and storm water utility, is implementing a watershed management approach to cost-effectively meet numerous regulatory requirements (e.g., Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) Program and Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Program). Additionally, SD1 has entered into a Consent Decree (CD) with state and federal environmental regulators to address sanitary overflows in these communities. In complying with these regulatory requirements, SD1 is applying an adaptive approach for identifying impairments and prioritizing areas for action. This approach will help ensure that available resources are most effectively used. SD1 has developed an Adaptive Watershed Management Plan that identifies Watershed Characterization in sixteen sub watersheds to relate in-stream conditions to watershed characteristics. The results of this Watershed Characterization will be used to identify impaired watersheds and prioritize them for consideration of control alternatives.

SD1 initiated a comprehensive watershed wide monitoring program in 2006 that involved the collection of instream water quality data in each of the sixteen watersheds in Northern Kentucky to characterize background conditions in the region. These sixteen watersheds represent varying conditions with respect to the amount of development, as well as sources of stream pollution. The variation in the stream conditions can range from undeveloped watersheds that have been categorized as “exceptional” waters by the State, while other watersheds are more highly developed and are identified as “impaired” by the State. As a result of the vast differences between these watersheds, SD1 has implemented a biweekly sampling program over a two year period to further characterize stream conditions under a wide range of environmental conditions at 20 locations throughout Northern Kentucky.

After the biweekly sampling program was concluded in June 2017, the ambient sampling program began in July 2017. This sampling program has the same sampling protocol, but the schedule and sites have changed. Instead of 20 locations there are 15.

The following ambient sampling *Field Monitoring and Sampling Plan* (FMSP) is designed to ensure that all monitoring activities undertaken result in representative data necessary to support the characterization of the watershed being sampled.

Monitoring and sampling stations have been selected to provide appropriate coverage to meet the assessment and modeling needs of the watershed characterization process.

1.1 Program Overview

This FMSP describes the water quality monitoring program for the ambient sampling of Northern Kentucky streams. The purpose of the FMSP is three fold:

- To supplement the Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP)
- To provide project and field staff with an understanding of the program and how to complete the base flow monitoring program; and,
- To define the level of effort and analytical needs.

The FMSP is intended to provide practical assistance in obtaining representative and reliable data in a technically sound and safe manner.

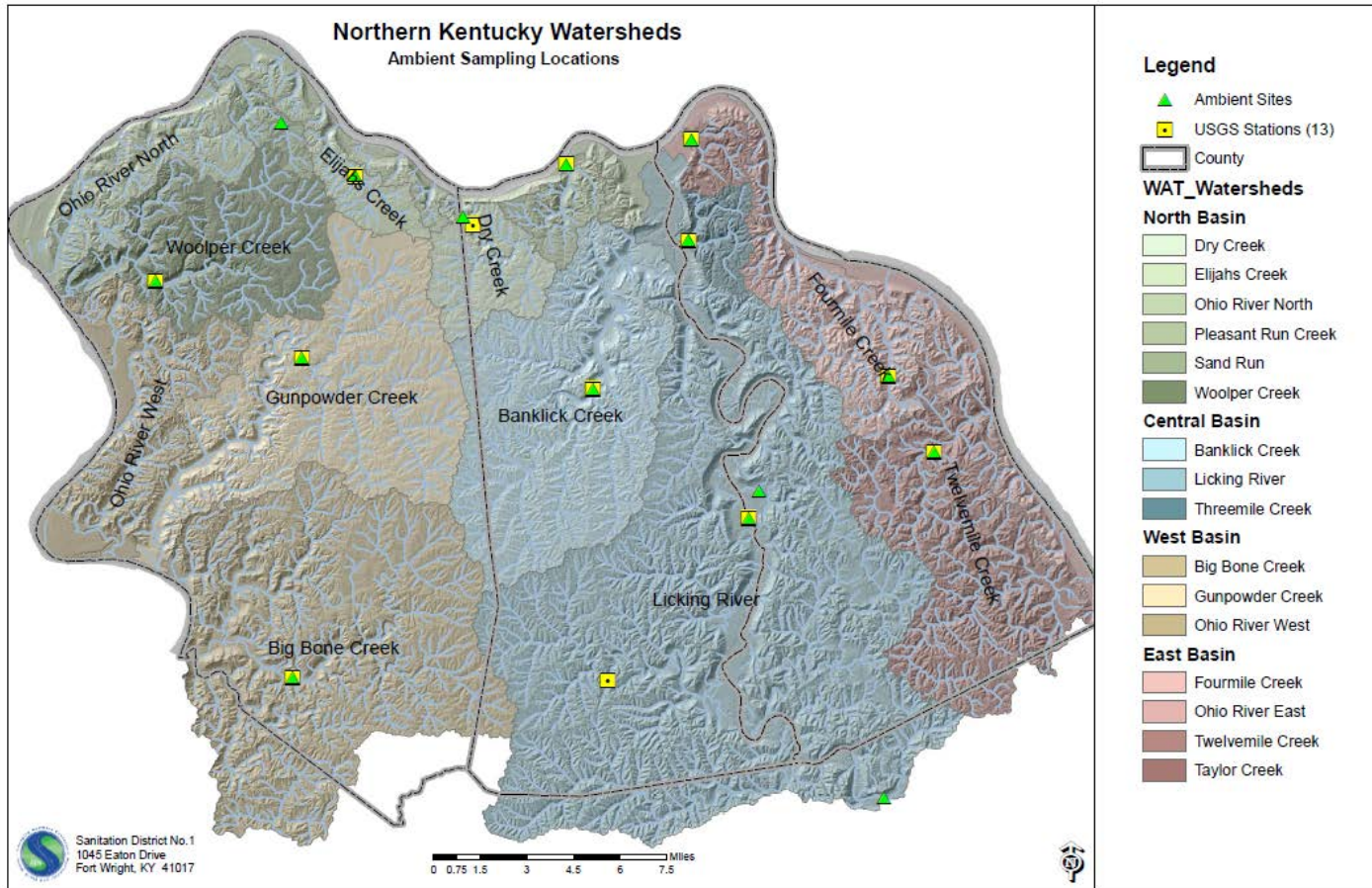
The procedures and protocols presented in this document address the following water quality and quantity monitoring program components:

- Monitoring and sampling criteria
- Stream water quality monitoring
- Sample handling and transportation
- QA/QC requirements
- Program Health and Safety

This program was designed to collect data that will be used to assess variation of water quality concerns identified in Northern Kentucky watersheds. The ambient data collected in Northern Kentucky streams is required to support water quality modeling, and pollutant source identification.

Figure 1 shows locations in the watersheds of the Northern Kentucky area that have been identified as monitoring and sampling stations. The sampling locations shown in Figure 1 are discussed in more detail in Section 3.

Figure 1 **Monitoring and Sampling Stations**



1.2 Monitoring Team

The monitoring team consists of the Project Manager, the Field Manager, and sampling crew. Responsibilities of key team members are listed in Table 1.

Table 1 Team Member Responsibilities

Position	SD1 Team Member	Responsibilities
Project Manager	Mindy Scott	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Assess suitability of sampling events• Perform System Audits• Circulation of reports and results• Staff Training• Review Reporting• Ensure necessary resources are available• Creation of event reports• QA/QC review
Field Manager	Elizabeth Fet	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Implementation of FMSP• Initiate sampling events• Coordinate with laboratory• Mobilize field crews• Collection and review of field logs, lab results, and other program documentation• Ongoing management of field staff and equipment

Prior to the first sampling event, a flowchart will be created which contains all members of the different sampling crews and laboratory contacts along with their respective contact numbers (home, work, and/or cellular numbers). This will allow for a network of communication prior to and during the monitored events. A communication network for the sampling team is essential to the ability to adapt the sampling program to changing environmental or weather conditions and/or equipment malfunctions.

2. MONITORING AND SAMPLING CRITERIA

The objective of the ambient monitoring and sampling program is to represent varying conditions with respect to the amount of development, as well as sources of stream pollution in each watershed. SD1 is implementing this program to further characterize stream conditions under a wide range of environmental conditions.

The criteria used to define the ambient sampling include:

- Weather conditions will vary, but sampling will be conducted unless deemed unsafe

The goal will be to conduct the sampling in varying weather conditions. The sampling will be distributed throughout the monitoring period by basin to characterize Northern Kentucky streams during fluctuating flow conditions.

Local conditions may require these criteria to be modified as the study progresses. Best professional judgment will be necessary to assess the suitability of a particular biweekly sampling event.

3. *STREAM CHARACTERIZATION*

Stream monitoring and sampling will be conducted at designated stations along Northern Kentucky streams as shown in Figure 1. Water quality monitoring and sampling will be conducted as follows:

- Samples will be collected at all sites on the designated day as shown on the corresponding schedule according to the surface water quality monitoring program protocols;
- All sites will be characterized on-site for in-stream water quality measurements (temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity and turbidity).

Table 2 describes each of the stations as depicted in Figure 1. Station selection was based on an initial watershed reconnaissance, which focused upon suitable site configuration for stream sampling and location relative to key pollutant source inputs. Once final sampling locations were identified, latitude and longitude coordinates were obtained with a Global Positioning System (GPS) unit and recorded.

Standard operating procedures (SOPs) referenced in the following sections are provided in Appendix A.

Table 2 Ambient Monitoring Locations

Basin	Watershed/Sites	Locations	Description
Central	Licking (3)	LIR19.3	Visalia Bridge 536 (USGS)
		LIR35.5	Butler, KY
		POC0.9	Bridge on Indian Trace by Joann Lane
	Banklick (1)	BLC8.1	Richardson Road Bridge (USGS)
	Threemile (1)	THC0.7	Threemile Creek Road (USGS)
East	Fourmile (1)	FMC6.9	Poplar Ridge Road (USGS)
	Twelvemile (1)	TMC3.0	Route 1997 (USGS)
	Taylor (1)	TYC0.6	Donnermeyer Drive under 471 (USGS)
North	Woolper (1)	WPC5.0	Woolper Road (USGS)
	Elijahs (1)	EJC2.8	Elijah Creek Road (USGS)
	Dry Creek (1)	DRC1.4	Dry Creek WWTP (USGS)
	Pleasant Run (1)	PRC0.3	Bridge on Oak Street (USGS)
	Sand Run (1)	SDR4.0	Thornwilde Subdivision
West	Gunpowder (1)	GPC14.7	Camp Ernst Road (USGS)
	Big Bone (1)	MLC3.0	Bridge at US 42 (USGS)

15 total sites

3.1 On-Site Water Quality Measurements

All sites will be subject to on-site measurements during sampling events. On-site measurements will include DO, pH, temperature, conductivity and turbidity.

On-site water quality instrumentation will be calibrated and maintained in accordance with Standard Operating Procedures Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation.

3.2 Ambient Sampling

Most sampling locations are accessible by bridges or by wading. Table 3 presents the monitoring schedule for the surface water sampling program for biweekly sampling. All sampling will be performed by SD1 staff. Biweekly samples will be collected as grab samples in accordance with Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of

Discrete Water Samples. Biweekly sampling events will be completed by day, utilizing two person crews as described in Table 3.

All grab samples will be collected with a sampling pole, stainless steel bucket or glove method. Sampling events will start at the downstream site and progress upstream. This approach to biweekly sampling is designed to collect a representative sample of current conditions in the stream. Immediately after sample collection, on-site measurements will be taken as previously described.

Table 3 Ambient Monitoring Schedule

Day One

Watershed	Site	Description
Big Bone	MLC3.0	Bridge at US 42 (USGS)
Gunpowder	GPC14.7	Camp Ernst Road (USGS)
Woolper	WPC5.0	Woolper Road (USGS)
Elijahs	EJC2.8	Elijah Creek Road (USGS)
Sand Run	SDR4.0	Thornwilde Subdivision

Day Two

Watershed	Site	Description
Licking River	POC0.9	Bridge on Indian Trace by Joann Lane
	LIR19.3	Visalia Bridge 536 (USGS)
	LIR35.5	Butler, KY
Twelvemile	TMC3.0	Route 1997 (USGS)
Fourmile	FMC6.9	Poplar Ridge Road (USGS)

Day Three

Watershed	Site	Description
Banklick	BLC8.1	Richardson Road Bridge (USGS)
Threemile	THC0.7	Threemile Creek Road (USGS)
Taylor	TYC0.6	Donnermeyer Drive under 471 (USGS)
Pleasant Run	PRC0.3	Bridge on Oak Street (USGS)
Dry Creek	DRC1.4	Dry Creek WWTP (USGS)

3.3 Summary

Table 4 presents a summary of the field monitoring and sampling plan for Northern Kentucky watersheds.

Table 4 Summary of Water Quality Monitoring and Sampling Program

Type	Locations	Description	Parameters
Ambient Sampling	15 total locations, throughout Northern Kentucky 4 basins (North, Central, West, East)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Samples collected one week per month (March, April, June, August, October and November) ♦ Samples collected twice per month (May, July, and September) ♦ 1 grab sample per site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ On-site measurements will include: temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity and turbidity. ♦ Water quality parameters will include: bacteria (EC), nitrogen (TKN, NH₃, NO₃-NO₂), phosphorus (total and ortho), total suspended solids, and CBOD₅.

Table 5 summarizes the number of samples to be collected exclusive of quality control protocols.

Table 5 Summary of Number of Samples to be Collected

Task	Day One	Day Two	Day Three
<i>Day Sampled</i>	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday
<i>No. of Events per week</i>	1	1	1
<i>No. of Sites</i>	5	5	5
Bacteria			
<i>E. coli</i>	5	5	5
Nutrients			
NH ₃	5	5	5
NO ₃ - NO ₂	5	5	5
TKN	5	5	5
Total Phosphorus	5	5	5
Ortho Phosphate (field filtered)	5	5	5
Solids			
TSS	5	5	5
Other			
CBOD ₅	5	5	5
Total Sample Load	45	45	45

4. FIELD MEASUREMENTS

In-stream dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, conductivity, and turbidity will be measured using appropriate field instruments concurrent with sample collection at each of the sampling locations. Each on-site parameter will be measured at each location during each sampling event. Table 6 lists the parameters, location of measurement at each site, and method of measurement.

Field measurements will be conducted following the Standard Operating Procedures in Appendix A. Field instruments will be calibrated before initiating monitoring activities for each event. A post-monitoring calibration check will also be conducted at the end of each monitoring event. All calibration and maintenance activities will be documented on the Multiprobe Instrumentation Calibration and QA Sheet (see Appendix A).

Measurements will be documented on the Field Data Sheet (see Appendix C). Documentation will include: date/time, location, type of measurement, personnel, equipment and associated calibration specifications, and general site observations (e.g., weather conditions).

Table 6. Field Measurements

Parameter	Location of Measurement	Method
Temperature	Mid-channel, mid-depth where possible	Hydrolab
Conductivity		
pH		
Dissolved Oxygen		
Turbidity		

5. SAMPLING HANDLING AND CUSTODY

The following sections outlines the sample labeling procedures, sample handling, chain-of-custody and record keeping required.

5.1 Sample Labeling

All samples will be assigned a unique identification code such that all necessary information can be attained from the sample label. The labels will be available in an electronic template and can be printed once the information has been added to the template. The code will identify the following:

Label: ____ ____ ____ ____ . ____
 1 2 3 4 5

Characters 1-5: Sample Site ID

Example: FMC0.5

In addition to the label, the sample bottles will be clearly marked using waterproof ink with the following information:

- Client – SD1
- Analyses – List of requested analyses to be performed from the container
- Preservative – Preservative in sample container
- Date – Date sample was collected
- Time – Time sample was collected
- Crew – Crew identification

5.2 Sampling Collection, Handling and Transport

General guidelines for sample collection are listed below. Refer to Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples for detailed procedures.

- All samples collected in intermediate sampling containers should be transferred to their appropriate laboratory sample bottle as quickly as possible.
- Sampling location codes will be used to distinguish each distinct sampling location.
- Sample labels and chains of custody must be filled out completely.

The following procedures will be followed when handling and transporting samples:

- Samples will be preserved using ice and transported in sample coolers. It should be ensured that plenty of ice is used for each sample cooler to maintain the temperatures inside the cooler at approximately 4° C.
- Laboratory chain-of-custody forms will be included with all sample submissions. Field staff will keep copies.
- Sample bottles and coolers should be handled with care to prevent breakage/spillage.
- All sample bottle labels must be properly completed and placed firmly on each bottle by the field sampling crews.

5.3 Chain-of-Custody

Field crews will complete chain-of-custody forms to document the transfer of sample custody to the designated custodian and subsequent personnel, see Appendix B. Signatures of all personnel involved in the collection, transport, and receipt of each sample will be recorded on the chain-of-custody forms.

In certain instances, sample custody will be transferred to runners to transport the samples directly to the laboratory at designated times during sampling to avoid missing holding times. The chain-of-custody form outlines sample location, identification, collection time and date, and specific parameters to be analyzed for each sample. A properly completed chain-of-custody form must accompany all samples.

Use of the chain-of-custody form will terminate when laboratory personnel receive the samples and sign the form. The laboratory will open the sample coolers and carefully check the contents for evidence of leakage and to verify that samples were kept on ice. The laboratory will then verify that all information on the sample container label is correct and consistent with the chain-of-custody form. Any discrepancy between the sample bottle and the chain-of-custody form, any leaking sample containers, or any other abnormal situation will be reported to the Laboratory Manager. The Laboratory Manager will inform the Project Manager of any such problem, and corrective actions will be discussed and implemented.

5.4 Field Logs and Records

Field crews will document all activities associated with the monitoring program at each monitoring site, including unusual or anomalous conditions. In addition, a description of any problems encountered during the monitoring period and/or any deviations to the FMSP will also be documented. This information may subsequently be used for data interpretation and analyses.

All pertinent information will be recorded on Field Data Sheets which are included as Appendix C.

At the conclusion of each monitored event, all Field Data Sheets will be submitted to the Field Manager to serve as a chronological representation of the monitored event. At a minimum each data field sheet should include the following information:

- Project name, site/river name, sample type;
- Crew identification, date, start time/end time;
- Weather conditions, stream conditions, site conditions;
- Physical parameter data (on-site measurements);
- On-site water quality meter identification number used to measure physical parameter data;
- Field observations.

All entries will be completed with a permanent ink pen with no erasures, correction fluid, or tape used. Erroneous entries will be noted using a single line drawn through the mistake that is then dated and initialed.

5.5 *Sample Containers and Preservation*

Table 7 presents details of sample containers and preservatives to be used. The laboratory will provide all bottles pre-preserved.

Table 7 Guidelines for Sample Container Preparation and Preservation

Parameter	Container	Recommended Sample Volume	Preservation	Maximum Storage Time
Bacteria				
<i>E. coli</i>	Pre-Sterilized Polyethylene or Glass	120 ml	Add $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_7$ ¹ Refrigerate to 4°C	12 hours ²
Nutrients				
NH ₃ TKN NO ₃ -NO ₂ Total Phosphorus	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Add H ₂ SO ₄ , pH<2 Refrigerate to 4°C	28 days
Ortho Phosphate	Polyethylene or Glass	120 ml	Field filter Refrigerate to 4°C	48 hours
Conventional				
TSS	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Refrigerate to 4°C	7 days
CBOD ₅	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Refrigerate to 4°C	48 hours
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sodium Thiosulfate ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_7$) prevents continuation of bacteriocidal action. 2. The maximum allowable holding time for bacteria samples will be 12 hours with a goal of 6 hours when practical. 				

6. QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

The purpose of any quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) program is to ensure that all sampling protocols and procedures are followed such that samples are representative of the water quality to which they are associated. The program is designed to be a systematic process, which together with the laboratory QA/QC program ensures a high degree of confidence in the data collection. The proposed QA/QC program includes the following elements:

- Training of all field staff;
- Field quality control procedures;
- Equipment cleaning protocol;
- QA/QC samples; and,
- Equipment calibration.

6.1 Training

Training sessions will be carried out for all field staff on proper sampling, sample handling and submission and general field procedures. Specific emphasis will be placed on QA/QC issues as well as on health and safety. Field crews will receive training involving the operation, maintenance and calibration of water quality meters, and all other on-site equipment used throughout the field program. SOPs for all program elements will be distributed to staff and available at all times.

6.2 Field Quality Control

The quality of data generated in a laboratory depends primarily on the integrity of the samples that arrive at the laboratory. Consequently, necessary precautions must be taken to protect samples from contamination and deterioration. Procedures detailed in Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples and Standard Operating Procedures for Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation will be followed to ensure field quality control.

6.3 Equipment Cleaning Protocol

All sampling equipment (i.e. intermediate containers, sampling buckets, etc.) will follow the QA/QC protocol outlined in Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples to ensure representative sample collection. When using the sampling pole or stainless steel bucket, only step 2 (Blank Water Rinse) of the decontamination procedure needs to be utilized.

6.4 QA/QC Samples

The monitoring team will use three types of QA/QC samples collected in the field to assist in validating chemical data sets – sample duplicates, equipment blanks, and field blanks. Each type of QA/QC sample is described in the following sections. Tables 8 and 9 present the schedule and number of QA/QC samples to be collected during the field program.

Table 8 QA/QC Sample Schedule

Ambient Sampling			
Day	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday
	Dup*, FB, MB	Dup*, FB, MB	Dup*, FB, MB
MB= Method Blank Dup = Duplicate			
FB = Field Blank * = Dup will rotate between days			

Table 9 Number of QA/QC Samples

Ambient Sampling	Field Blanks ²	Method Blanks ³	Duplicate Samples ⁴	Total per Event
Day 1	1	1	1	3
Day 2	1	1	0	2
Day 3	1	1	0	2
Totals	3	3	1	7
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Each QA/QC sample set is performed on the complete series of samples submitted for laboratory analysis.2. One set of field blanks per day will be collected during each day of the week.3. One set of method blanks (at one site) per day will be collected during each day of the event.4. One set of duplicates (at one site) will be collected during each week.				

6.4.1 **Sample Duplicates**

Sample duplicates will be collected for laboratory analysis for each parameter. The purpose of these analyses is to evaluate sample collection precision by comparing the duplicate analytical results. One set of duplicate samples at a sampling location, randomly identified, will be collected by each field crew during the sampling event. Duplicates will be rotated among streams between sampling rounds. Approximately 10 percent of the samples will be collected in duplicate.

6.4.2 **Method Blanks**

Method blanks (MB) will be collected for laboratory analysis for orthophosphate only. The purpose of these analyses is to assess potential cross-contamination of samples by the method in which the sample was collected. These blanks will be taken at the conclusion of each sampling shift by each crew.

6.4.3 Field Blanks

Field blanks will be collected for laboratory analysis for all parameters. The purpose of these analyses is to determine if samples collected have been contaminated by field handling and cleaning methods. Each field crew will collect these blanks immediately following the collection of the AEB equipment blanks.

6.5 Equipment Calibration

On-site physical parameters will be measured in-stream by water quality meters and recorded on data sheets. These instruments will be calibrated each sampling day before use according to the manufactures operating manual as outlined in Standard Operating Procedures for Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation.

At the conclusion of the sampling event, each meter will be checked with the standards used during calibration. The purpose of these readings is to evaluate the meter's precision (electronic drift) by comparing the readings recorded during calibration and the readings recorded during the check at the end of the sampling day.

At the conclusion of each sampling event, all Calibration Sheets will be submitted to the Field Manager to serve as a record of the meter's performance during the sampling event.

7. PROGRAM SAFETY

The most critical component of a sampling program is crew safety. Safety is of paramount importance as stream sampling can be extremely dangerous. The element of danger is accentuated if personnel are unfamiliar with their surroundings and/or procedures, consequently staff must be properly trained in both safety and monitoring procedures, following a well thought out program.

With stream monitoring, common sense is essential. Two hazards that field staff may face more often, especially if wet weather occurs during sampling, are high stream conditions and slippery footing. If stream levels are deemed to be too high or too fast, under no circumstances should any field staff enter the stream or operate near its banks. With surfaces being wet and slippery, special care must be taken when walking and working around bridges.

Wading is one of the easiest methods to collect samples from many streams, and it may also be extremely dangerous. Wading permits the investigator to examine stream flow and decide where to sample. Rubber boots or even chest-high waders are standard equipment. If the wader has any uncertainty about their ability to wade a stream, they should be attached by a rope to a rigid mooring and wear an approved floatation device.

If creek conditions are high and fast, field staff will wear a safety belt or harness and will be appropriately tethered when working in close proximity to the creek. Along with being attached by rope, field staff must wear an approved floatation device.

There must be a minimum of two field staff working together during any sampling event.

7.1 *General Safety Practices*

- Water depth during wading operations must be checked with a pole before steps are taken.
- When wading equipment is worn, the support straps must be outside the clothing.
- In all situations field parties are required to leave accurate sampling schedules and expected itineraries in the office.
- Sampling must never be carried out in weather that is considered by the Field Manager or field member to be hazardous to the well-being of the field staff and/or equipment.
- Field staff are required to wear approved floatation devices and be tethered if conditions warrant use.
- First aid kits will be issued to all field crews.
- Each field crew will have a cellular phone and have been instructed on emergency procedures and numbers.
- Each field crew will report upon leaving and returning from any sampling or field work to their Field Manager.
- Each field crew will have appropriate lights, markers, etc. to be able to perform their work safely under poor visibility/nightfall.
- Each field crew will have the appropriate road safety equipment as required.

7.2 *Health Hazards*

Disease causing bacteria, viruses, and parasites are always present in sewers and discharge streams. They occur in both liquid sewage and dry sludge which coats pipes, and other surfaces. The serious threats are Hepatitis A (virus), Hepatitis B (virus), Tetanus (bacteria), Typhoid (bacteria), and Polio (virus). Proper hygiene methods must be followed. Wash hands before eating or smoking. Protective clothing must be laundered and equipment kept clean. Workers should avoid touching their eyes to prevent an inflammation. Cuts and abrasions of the skin should be covered by bandages or gloves to minimize the chance of infection by organisms.

APPENDIX A

STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR FIELD MONITORING AND SAMPLING

Standard Operating Procedures
for the
Collection of Discrete Water Samples

Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No. 1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

Revision Number: 1
September 2006

Introduction

This document describes the procedures for the collection of discrete water samples in Northern KY watersheds by Sanitation District No.1. These methods allow for the collection of grab or composite samples utilizing various sample collection techniques. This standard operating procedures document (SOP) has been developed to maintain consistent data collection procedures, and to ensure the quality of the data collected.

1.0.0 Field Equipment

The following equipment is needed to implement the sampling techniques.

- Stainless Steel Bucket w/ Rope
- Sampling Pole
- Kemmerer Sampling Bottle Kit
- Churn Sample Splitter
- Chemical Decontamination Agent (Solvent or Weak Acid)
- Chemical Waste Bucket
- Blank Water (Distilled or Reagent Grade Deionized – RGDI)
- Sample Bottles
- Coolers and Ice
- Scrub Brush
- Disposable Gloves
- Field Sampling Plan
- Permanent Marker (Sharpie)

Individuals handling solvents or acids should wear rubber gloves and eye protection to prevent possible injuries.

The following parameters can be collected with the ensuing sampling techniques: bacteria (fecal coliform and *E. coli*), oxygen demand (BOD₅, CBOD₅, COD), chlorophyll *a*, nutrients (total phosphorus, orthophosphate, nitrate-nitrite, Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen, ammonia), total hardness, metals, and solids (TSS, TDS).

Refer to Attachment 1 for an alternative collection procedure for parameters that do not require preservatives utilizing the glove method.

Refer to Attachment 2 for filtration procedures for orthophosphate collection.

2.0.0 Preparation

Before collecting samples, properly fill out the label (date, time, sampling point, sample ID number, analysis required, preservative, and the name of the collecting entity and sampling crew member) on all bottles using a permanent marker and affix the labels to the bottles. Ideally, the labels are filled out (except date and time) and attached to the sample bottles before the sampling event occurs. In addition to the sample label, identify the lid of each container with the sample ID number using the permanent marker.

Prior to collecting samples, both the coolers and the sample bottles should be visually inspected for presence of any dirt, chemicals, or other contaminants. If a sample bottle has any contaminants present, discard it and use another. The coolers should be wiped down or washed with a mild soap and thoroughly rinsed if it has any contaminants present. In addition all sampling equipment must be inspected for proper operation.

The sampler's hands should be washed with a mild soap and water immediately before the sampling event begins. When actually collecting the samples, disposable gloves shall be worn and care taken to avoid touching or otherwise contaminating the inner surface of the sample bottles or lids.

3.0.0 Procedures

Keep all sampling bottles closed until they are ready to be filled. At each collection site, the sampler will wear a new set of gloves for decontamination procedures and new set of gloves for sample collection. If sampling from a boat or structure, collect the sample from the upstream side. Avoid placing the sampling device in contact with the streambed or bank. Once the sample is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

3.1.0 Stainless Steel Bucket

Prior to sampling, the stainless steel bucket must be inspected to ensure that it is in good condition, and that the nylon rope is not torn or frayed.

3.1.1 Decontamination Procedures

The stainless steel bucket must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Discard the detergent solution.
- Rinse the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Chemical Rinse – Solvent or Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the inside of the bucket thoroughly with the chemical.
- Discard the chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water into the waste container.

Step 3 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat Step 3.

3.1.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete surface grab samples (most often used for shallow water sampling from a bridge or stream bank) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- Rinse the bucket with river water by submerging the bucket into the stream at the collection site.
- Remove the bucket from the stream and discard its contents downstream of where the sample will be collected.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Lower the bucket into the stream to obtain a surface grab sample.
- Remove the bucket from the stream.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

3.2.0 Sampling Pole

The pole must be inspected to ensure it is clean and all parts are working properly. Prior to sampling, ensure the bottle is properly attached and snapper band is securely fastened. Once pole is extended, verify that the locking mechanism is secured.

3.2.1 Decontamination Procedures

The sampling pole and bottle attachment must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the entire pole with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Discard the detergent solution.
- Rinse the entire pole with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the bottle attachment with blank water.
- Discard blank water.
- Repeat Step 2.

3.2.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete surface grab samples (most often used for shallow water sampling from a bridge or stream bank) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – Sample Collection

- Attach a clean unpreserved bottle onto the pole.
- Lower the bottle into the stream to obtain a surface grab sample.
- Make sure the bottle does not touch the bottom of the stream and try to avoid floating debris entering the bottle.
- Remove the bottle from the stream.
- Repeat as necessary to fill the required sample bottles. (Attempt to proportional divide the sample volume equally between sample bottles in order to average out any temporal variations.)
- Detach the bottle from the pole and:
 - a) If using a sample bottle, place in the cooler.
 - b) If using a transfer bottle, discard when finished.

3.3.0 Kemmerer Sampling Bottle

Prior to sampling, the Kemmerer must be inspected to ensure that the triggering mechanism is functioning properly, and that the nylon rope is not torn or frayed.

3.3.1 Decontamination Procedures

The Kemmerer must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Chemical Rinse – Solvent or Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer thoroughly with the chemical.
- Purge a small amount of the chemical from the drain valve into the waste container.
- Open the top and discard the remaining chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the drain valve into the waste container.
- Open the top and discard the remaining blank water into the waste container.

Step 2 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the drain valve.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat Step 2.

3.3.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete water column grab samples (most often used for deep water sampling from a boat) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- Open the Kemmerer bottle.
- Rinse the Kemmerer with river water by submerging it into the stream at the collection site.
- Remove the Kemmerer from the stream.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Lower the Kemmerer to the appropriate depth (utilize the boat fathometer to determine mid-depth and bottom depth).
 - a) Surface – Lower the Kemmerer to a depth of approximately one-foot below the surface.
 - b) Mid-Depth – Lower the Kemmerer to the appropriate depth.
 - c) Bottom – Lower the Kemmerer to a depth of approximately two-feet from the bottom (If Kemmerer contacts bottom sediment, repeat decontamination procedures before sample collection).
- Activate the closing mechanism of the Kemmerer to acquire sample volume.
- Remove the Kemmerer from the stream.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the drain valve.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

3.4.0 Churn Sample Splitter

Prior to sampling, the churn sample splitter must be inspected to ensure that it is in good condition, and that it is functioning properly.

3.4.1 Decontamination Procedures

The churn sample splitter must be cleaned before sub-samples are homogenized. In addition, the appropriate sample collection device must also be cleaned (stainless steel bucket – 3.1, sampling pole – 3.2 or Kemmerer – 3.3).

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Purge a small amount of the wash solution from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining detergent solution.
- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Chemical Rinse – Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter thoroughly with the chemical.
- Purge a small amount of the chemical from the spigot into the waste container.
- Discard the remaining chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot into the waste container.
- Discard the remaining blank water into the waste container.

Step 3 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat Step 3.

3.4.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Sub-samples (vertical or horizontal), obtained with a stainless steel bucket, sampling pole or Kemmerer bottle are homogenized into composite samples using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- River rinse by filling the churn splitter with the sampling device at the collection site.
- Purge a small amount of the stream water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining contents.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Obtain sub-samples following either stainless steel bucket, sampling pole, or Kemmerer collection procedures.
- Fill the churn splitter with approximately equal volumes from each sub-sample.

Step 3 – Homogenizing Sub-samples

- Mix the contents of the churn splitter, at a uniform churning rate, for 10 strokes prior to withdrawal of the first sample.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the spigot.
- While continuing to churn the sample volume, fill the required sample bottles.

4.0.0 Quality Assurance

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

4.1.0 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate grab samples fill the required bottles from the same stainless steel bucket, sampling pole, or Kemmerer. To collect duplicate composite samples fill the required bottles from the Churn Splitter sample volume.

4.2.0 Blanks

Blanks should be collected during each day of the survey. The sampler should wear a new set of gloves for each blank processed. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

4.2.1 Field Blanks

Pour blank water from an unopened container directly into the sample bottle.

4.2.2 Equipment Blanks

Equipment blanks should be collected at the beginning and end of each survey day.

Stainless Steel Bucket

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the stainless steel bucket with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

Sampling Pole

- The method for this device does not require a blank.

Kemmerer Bottle

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the Kemmerer with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the Kemmerer.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

Churn Sample Splitter

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer or stainless steel bucket) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Pour the blank water from the collection device into the churn splitter.
- Mix the contents of the churn splitter, at a uniform churning rate, for 10 strokes prior to withdrawal of the first sample.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the spigot.
- While continuing to churn the sample volume, fill the required sample bottles.

4.2.3 Trip Blanks (Optional)

Depending on study design, a trip blank may be utilized. This is a sample of RGDI water taken from the laboratory to the sampling site and returned to the laboratory unopened.

5.0.0 Chain of Custody Procedures

All samples are to be recorded on a Chain of Custody form with its identifying information. The Chain of Custody form is to be signed and submitted to the laboratory along with the samples.

Attachment 1

Collection of Unpreserved Parameters Utilizing the Glove Method

Introduction

This attachment describes the procedures for the collection of grab samples into unpreserved bottles utilizing the glove method. This method has been implemented to eliminate the use of sampling equipment (i.e. stainless steel bucket or Kemmerer) for collecting surface samples. The elimination of equipment reduces cleaning procedures and possible sources of contamination. In addition, this method significantly reduces sampling time.

1.0 Field Equipment

The following equipment is needed to implement the Glove Method collection technique.

- Disposable Gloves
- Sterilized Unpreserved Sample Bottles
- Cooler and Ice
- Permanent Marker (Sharpie)
- 1 Gallon Container of Blank Water (Distilled or RGDI)
- Anti-Bacteria Soap
- Knife

2.0 Preparation

Before collecting the sample, properly fill out the label (date, time, sampling point, sample ID number, analysis required, preservative and the name of the collecting entity and crew member) using a permanent marker and affix the label to the bottle. Ideally, the label is filled out (except data and time) and attached to the sample bottle before the sampling event occurs. In addition to the sample label, identify the lid of the bottle with the sample ID number using the permanent marker.

Prior to collecting samples, both the coolers and the sample bottles should be visually inspected for presence of any dirt, chemicals, or other contaminants. If a sample bottle has any contaminants present, discard it and use another. The coolers may be wiped down or washed with a mild soap and thoroughly rinsed if they have any contaminants present.

The sampler's hands should be washed with anti-bacteria soap and water immediately before the sampling event begins. When actually collecting the samples, disposable gloves shall be worn and care taken to avoid touching or otherwise contaminating the inner surface of the bottle or lid.

3.0 Procedures

Keep sample bottles closed until they are to be filled. At the collection site, the sampler will wear a new set of gloves and detach the lock mechanism from the lid. Fill the bottle by holding the bottle upright and plunging it into the stream directed toward the current. Keep the lid closed (so as not to lose the dechlorination tablet) until you have reached a depth of 6 to 12 inches below the surface. When the sample is collected, leave ample air space in the bottle to facilitate mixing by shaking. Avoid placing the sample bottle in contact with the streambed or bank. If sampling from a boat or structure, collect the sample from the upstream side.

Fill the bottle to the appropriate level (if more water is collected than needed, carefully pour out the excess) and properly close the lid. If taking a bacteria sample shake the bottle for 30 seconds to expedite dissolving the dechlorination tablet.

After the sample is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice. A new set of sterile gloves will be worn for each sample collected.

4.0 QA Samples

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

4.1 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate samples, plunge bottles into the river and fill one immediately after another.

4.2 Blanks

Blanks should be collected at the completion of each survey day. The sampler should wear a new set of gloves for each blank processed. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

4.2.1 Field Blank

Pour blank water from an unopened gallon container directly into the sample bottle.

4.2.2 Method Blank

With a clean pocketknife, cut off the top of the container used for the first field blank. Simulate stream collection by plunging the bottle, while wearing gloves, into the cut open gallon container. Keep the bottle upright and let the water flow over the top of the bottle until it is filled.

5.0 Chain of Custody Procedures

All samples are to be recorded on a Chain of Custody form with its identifying information. The Chain of Custody form is to be signed and submitted to the laboratory along with the samples.

If the sample bottles used have a tie, this tie must be cut in order to open the bottle, and should provide a measure of sample security and integrity.

6.0 Reference

USEPA. 1978. Microbiological Methods for Monitoring the Environment, Water and Wastes. Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio. EPA/600/8-78/017.

Attachment 2

Collection of Orthophosphate Samples

Introduction

This attachment describes the additional procedures needed for the collection of orthophosphate samples.

1.0 Additional Field Equipment

The following additional equipment is needed to implement the orthophosphate filtration method.

- Disposable 60cc Syringes (Luer-Lok tip)
- Disposable 25 mm Filter Cartridges (1µm Glass Fiber Filter and 0.45µm Nylon Membrane Filter)
- Sample Bottles

2.0 Procedures

A new disposable syringe and filter cartridge (syringe filtration unit) will be used for each sample.

2.1 Decontamination Procedures

The syringe filtration units must be cleaned before each sample is filtered.

Step 1 - Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the inside of the syringe by plunging 50mls of blank water through the housing.
- Attach the filter cartridge to the syringe.
- Rinse the inside of the entire unit by plunging 50mls of blank water through the unit.

2.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Samples can be filtered from the Kemmerer bottle, sampling pole, stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter using the following procedures.

Step 1 – Sample Filtration/Collection

Fill the syringe filtration unit with sample from the appropriate collection device.

Place the plunger into the syringe.

Purge a small amount of sample volume through the filter.

Discharge water through the filtration unit into a sample bottle.

Repeat the previous three bullets until enough sample has been filtered into the sample bottle.

Discard the syringe filtration unit.

3.0 Quality Assurance

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

3.1 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate samples continue to fill the syringe filtration unit from the same Kemmerer, sampling pole, or stainless steel bucket drop and filter into the required bottles.

3.2 Blanks

Blanks should be collected during each day of the survey. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

3.2.1 Field Blanks

Pour blank water from an unopened container directly into the sample bottle.

3.2.2 Equipment Blanks

Equipment blanks should be collected at the beginning and end of each survey day.

Unfiltered Equipment Blank

An equipment blank utilizing the appropriate collection device should be collected at the beginning of each survey day.

- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer, sampling pole (utilize clean transfer bottle), stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottle.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Fill the required sample bottle.

Filtered Equipment Blank

An equipment blank utilizing the syringe filtration unit should be collected at the end of each survey day. The syringe filtration unit is decontaminated using the previously outlined procedure before the blank is collected.

- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer, sampling pole (utilize clean transfer bottle), stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottle.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Fill the syringe filtration unit with sample from the appropriate collection device.
- Place the plunger into the syringe.
- Purge a small amount of blank water through the filter.
- Discharge water through the filtration unit into a sample bottle.
- Repeat the previous three bullets until enough volume has been filtered into the sample bottle.
- Discard the syringe filtration unit.

APPENDIX B

***NORTHERN KY SANITATION DISTRICT No.1
CHAIN OF CUSTODY***

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY

1045 Eaton Drive

Fort Wright, KY 41017

Phone: (859) 578-7460 Fax: (859) 331-2436

Chain Of Custody Record

Page _____ of _____



Project Name Ambient Monitoring						Watershed Various			Survey Location Ambient Monitoring Tuesday Sites									
Contact Person Mindy Scott		Sampler(s) Signature				Survey Type (Circle One) Wet or Dry												
Lab ID	Sample ID Code	Date	Time	Composite / Grab	Pole / Bucket / Glove	Sample Location	No. of Containers	Analysis Required										Remarks
								E. coli	TSS	CBOD5	TP, N-N, TKN, NH3	Orthophosphate						
	MLC3.0			G		Bridge at US42 (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	GPC14.7			G		Camp Ernst Road (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	WPC5.0			G		Woolper Road (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	EJC2.8			G		Elijah Creek Road (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	SDR4.0			G		Thornwilde Subdivision	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	DUP			G		duplicate	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	FB					Field Blank	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	MB					Method Blank	1					X						

Relinquished By: Sampler	Date	Time	Accepted By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Remarks
Relinquished By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Received By: Laboratory	Date	Time	Remarks

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY

 1045 Eaton Drive
 Fort Wright, KY 41017

Phone: (859)578-7460 Fax: (859)331-2436

Chain Of Custody Record

Page _____ of _____



Project Name Ambient Monitoring						Watershed Various		Survey Location Ambient Monitoring Wednesday Sites										
Contact Person Mindy Scott		Sampler(s) Signature				Survey Type (Circle One) Wet or Dry												
Lab ID	Sample ID Code	Date	Time	Composite / Grab	Pole / Bucket / Glove	Sample Location	No. of Containers	Analysis Required										Remarks
								E. coli	TSS	CBOD5	TP, N-N, TKN, NH3	Orthophosphate						
	POC0.9			G		Bridge on Indian Trace by Joann Lane	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	LIR19.3			G		USGS Gage Station Visalia bridge	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	LIR35.5			G		Butler, KY	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	TMC3.0			G		Route 1997 (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	FMC6.9			G		Poplar Ridge Road (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	DUP			G		duplicate	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	FB					Field Blank	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	MB					Method Blank	1					X						

Relinquished By: Sampler	Date	Time	Accepted By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Remarks
Relinquished By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Received By: Laboratory	Date	Time	Remarks

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017
Phone: (859)578-7460 Fax: (859)331-2436



Project Name Ambient Monitoring						Watershed Various			Survey Location Ambient Monitoring Thursday Sites									
Contact Person Mindy Scott		Sampler(s) Signature				Survey Type (Circle One) Wet or Dry												
Lab ID	Sample ID Code	Date	Time	Composite / Grab	Pole / Bucket / Glove	Sample Location	No. of Containers	Analysis Required										Remarks
								E. coli	TSS	CBOD5	TP, N-N, TKN, NH3	Orthophosphate						
	BLC8.1			G		Richardson Road Bridge	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	THC0.7			G		Threemile Creek Rd (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	TYC0.6			G		Donnermeyer Dr under 471 (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	PRC0.3			G		Bridge on Oak Street	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	DRC1.4			G		Dry Creek WWTP (USGS)	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	DUP			G		duplicate	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	FB					Field Blank	5	X	X	X	X	X						
	MB					Method Blank	1					X						

Relinquished By: Sampler	Date	Time	Accepted By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Remarks
Relinquished By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Received By: Laboratory	Date	Time	Remarks

APPENDIX C

***NORTHERN KY SANITATION DISTRICT No.1
FIELD DATA SHEET***

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 FIELD DATA SHEET

PROJECT NAME:	Ambient	DATE:		<u>SAMPLE TYPE</u>				
SITE / STREAM NAME:		START TIME:		GRAB	COMPOSITE			
SITE LOCATION:	Various	END TIME:		CIRCLE ONE				
LABORATORY:	Dry Creek	SAMPLERS:		<u>SAMPLE MATRIX</u>				
EQUIPMENT ID:	MULTIPROBE SONDE:			SEDIMENT	WATER			
STREAM CONDITIONS:	CIRCLE ONE							
SITE CONDITIONS:								
WEATHER CONDITIONS:	SUNNY	CLOUDY	OVERCAST	WINDY	RAIN	SNOW	AIR TEMP (F):	
	(CIRCLE APPROPRIATE CONDITIONS)							
PROJECT DESCRIPTOR:	Ambient Monitoring - Thursday Locations							

SITE / SAMPLE ID (BANK & DEPTH)	TEMP. (C)	pH	D.O. (mg/L)	SP. COND. (μS/cm)	TURBIDITY (NTU)	FLOW (Feet/sec)	SAMPLE TIME
BLC8.1							
THC0.7							
TYC0.6							
PRC0.3							
DRC1.4							
FB							
MB							
DUPLICATE:							

FIELD OBSERVATIONS:	IF FOUND, RETURN TO: SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 1045 EATON DRIVE FORT WRIGHT, KY 41017 (859) 578-7460
---------------------	---

**BASE FLOW CHARACTERIZATION
FIELD MONITORING & SAMPLING PLAN
FOR NORTHERN KENTUCKY WATERSHEDS
PHASE 3
2016-2019**



Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No.1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

April 2016

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	Program Overview	2
1.2	Monitoring Team	4
2.	MONITORING AND SAMPLING CRITERIA	5
3.	STREAM CHARACTERIZATION.....	6
3.1	On-Site Water Quality Monitoring	8
3.2	Dry Weather Sampling.....	9
3.3	Summary.....	11
4.	FIELD MEASUREMENTS	12
5.	SAMPLING HANDLING AND CUSTODY.....	13
5.1	Sample Labeling	13
5.2	Sampling Collection, Handling and Transport	13
5.3	Chain-of-Custody	14
5.4	Field Logs and Records.....	14
5.5	Sample Containers and Preservation.....	15
6.	QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM.....	16
6.1	Training	16
6.2	Field Quality Control	17
6.3	Equipment Cleaning Protocol	17
6.4	QA/QC Samples.....	17
6.4.1	Sample Duplicates.....	18
6.4.2	Equipment Blanks	18
6.4.3	Field Blanks	18
6.5	Equipment Calibration	19
7.	PROGRAM SAFETY	19
7.1	General Safety Practices	20
7.2	Health Hazards.....	20

FIGURES

Figure 1	Monitoring and Sampling Stations	3
----------	----------------------------------	---

TABLES

Table 1	Team Member Responsibilities	4
Table 2	Base flow Sampling Locations	7-8
Table 3	Base flow Monitoring Schedule	10
Table 4	Summary of Water Quality Monitoring and Sampling Program	11
Table 5	Summary of Number of Samples to be Collected	11
Table 6	Field Measurements	12
Table 7	Guidelines for Sample Container Preparation and Preservation	16
Table 8	QA/QC Sample Schedule	17
Table 9	Number of QA/QC Samples	18

APPENDICES

Appendix A	Standard Operating Procedures for Field Monitoring and Sampling
Appendix B	Northern KY Sanitation District No. 1 Chain of Custody
Appendix C	Northern KY Sanitation District No. 1 Field Data Sheet

1. INTRODUCTION

Sanitation District No. 1 (SD1) a clean water agency that serves over 30 communities in Campbell, Kenton, and Boone Counties, Kentucky as both the wastewater and storm water utility, is implementing a watershed management approach to cost-effectively meet numerous regulatory requirements (e.g., Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) Program and Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) Program). Additionally, SD1 has entered into a Consent Decree (CD) with state and federal environmental regulators to address sewer overflows in these communities. In complying with these regulatory requirements, SD1 is applying an adaptive approach for identifying impairments and prioritizing areas for action. This approach will help ensure that available resources are most effectively used. SD1 has developed an Adaptive Watershed Management Plan that includes Watershed Characterization in sixteen sub watersheds to relate in-stream conditions to watershed characteristics. The results of this Watershed Characterization will be used to identify impaired watersheds and prioritize them for consideration of control alternatives.

An initial element of the Plan is to establish baseline conditions throughout the three county area. Initial surveys were conducted in 2006 and continued through 2010. The 2006 surveys included two rounds of sampling at approximately 50 sites; where as in 2007 and 2008, the program was expanded to include 75 sites to be sampled once annually. In 2009-2010 the program was expanded to include 77 total sites. The 2011 season was a 'catch-up' year, with only five sites sampled. In the 2012 season, only sites within the East Basin were sampled. The 2012 sampling year marked the beginning of the Phase 2 portion of the monitoring program. Sites in the East Basin were originally sampled in 2007, and were resampled in 2012. During the 2013 season, only sites in the Central Basin were sampled and during the 2014 season, sites were sampled in the North Basin. During the 2015 sampling season the West Basin was sampled.

Beginning in 2016, sampling will be back in the East Basin and will then rotate each year to a separate basin: 2017 Central Basin, 2018 North Basin and 2019 West Basin.

The following base flow characterization *Field Monitoring and Sampling Plan* (FMSP) is designed to ensure that all monitoring activities undertaken result in representative data necessary to support the characterization of the watershed being sampled. Dry weather water quality sampling will be conducted to characterize current base flow stream conditions.

Monitoring and sampling stations have been selected to provide appropriate coverage to meet the assessment and modeling needs of the watershed characterization process.

1.1 Program Overview

This FMSP describes the water quality monitoring program for the base flow watershed characterization of Northern Kentucky streams. The purpose of the FMSP is three fold:

- To supplement the Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP)
- To provide project and field staff with an understanding of the program and how to complete the base flow monitoring program; and,
- To define the level of effort and analytical needs.

The FMSP is intended to provide practical assistance in obtaining representative and reliable data in a technically sound and safe manner.

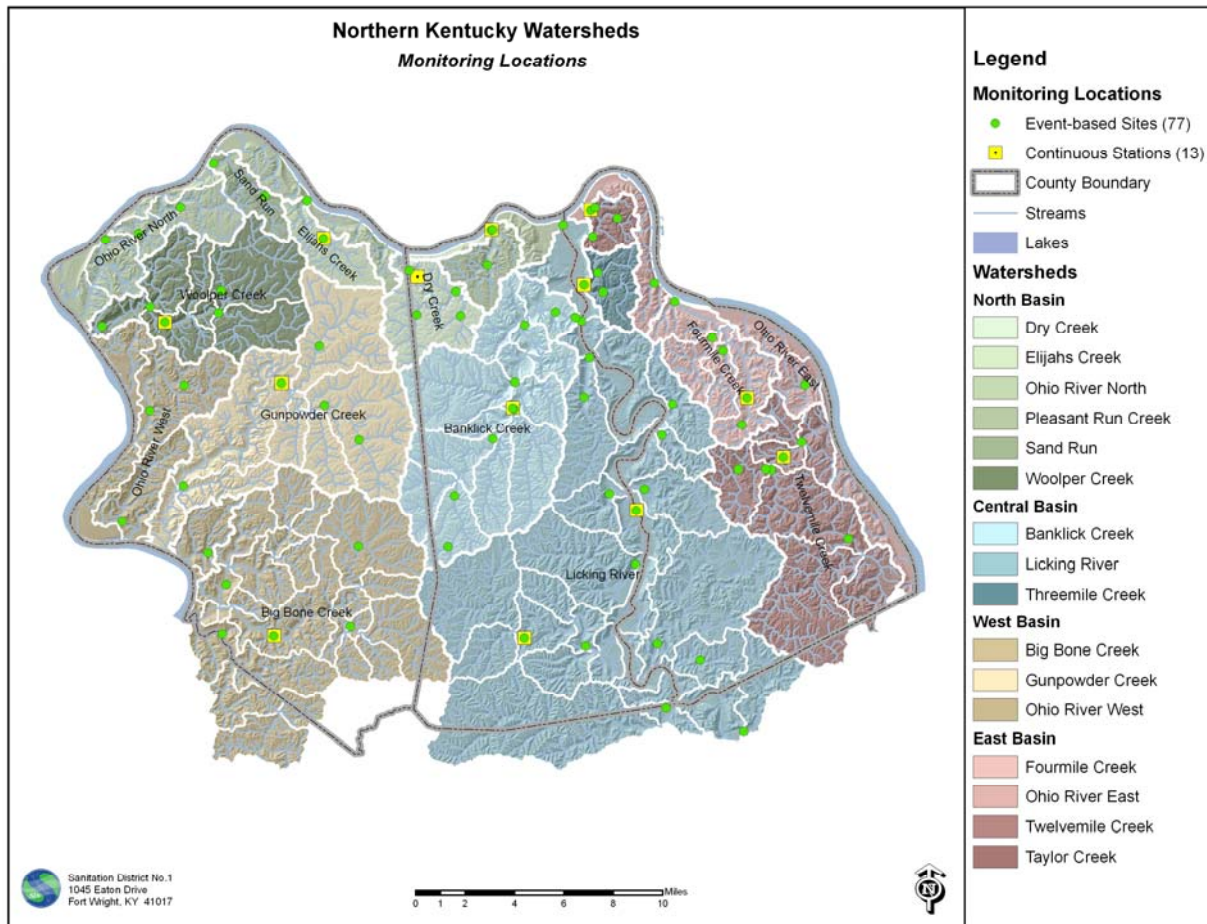
The procedures and protocols presented in this document address the following water quality and quantity monitoring program components:

- Monitoring and sampling criteria
- Stream water quality monitoring
- Sample handling and transportation
- QA/QC requirements
- Program Health and Safety

This program was designed to collect data that will be used to assess base flow water quality concerns identified in Northern Kentucky watersheds. The base flow data collected in Northern Kentucky streams is required to support water quality modeling, and pollutant source identification. The monitoring and sampling program will be conducted during the contact recreation season May 1st – October 31st.

Figure 1 shows locations in the watersheds of the Northern Kentucky area that have been identified as monitoring and sampling stations. The sampling locations shown in Figure 1 are discussed in more detail in Section 3.

Figure 1 **Monitoring and Sampling Stations**



1.2 **Monitoring Team**

The monitoring team consists of the Project Manager, the Field Manager, and sampling crew. Responsibilities of key team members are listed in Table 1.

Table 1 Team Member Responsibilities

Position	SD1 Team Member	Responsibilities
Project Manager	Mindy Scott	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Assess suitability of sampling events• Perform System Audits• Circulation of reports and results• Staff Training• Review Reporting• Ensure necessary resources are available• Creation of event reports• QA/QC review
Field Manager	Elizabeth Fet	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Implementation of FMSP• Initiate sampling events• Coordinate with laboratory• Mobilize field crews• Collection and review of field logs, lab results, and other program documentation• Ongoing management of field staff and equipment

Prior to the first sampling event, a flowchart will be created which contains all members of the different sampling crews and laboratory contacts along with their respective contact numbers (home, work, pager, and/or cellular numbers). This will allow for a network of communication prior to and during the monitored events. A communication network for the sampling team is essential to the ability to adapt the sampling program to changing environmental or weather conditions and/or equipment malfunctions.

2. *MONITORING AND SAMPLING CRITERIA*

The objective of the base flow monitoring and sampling program is to characterize water quality during the contact recreational season under dry weather conditions by providing current background data in each watershed.

The criteria used to define a dry weather monitoring and sampling event include:

- No precipitation in the watershed 72 hours before the event; and,
- Dry weather conditions must prevail throughout the monitoring and sampling event.
- Sampling must take place during the contact recreational season beginning May 1st and ending October 31st.

One round of dry weather monitoring will be completed each year. The goal will be to conduct the sampling by basin. The sampling will be distributed throughout the monitoring period by basin to characterize Northern Kentucky streams during typical base flow conditions.

The dry weather criteria will serve as the minimum requirements for initiating sampling. Local conditions may require these criteria to be modified as the study progresses. Best professional judgment will be necessary to assess the suitability of a particular dry weather sampling event.

3. *STREAM CHARACTERIZATION*

Stream monitoring and sampling will be conducted at designated stations along Northern Kentucky streams as shown in Figure 1. Water quality monitoring and sampling will be conducted as follows:

- One round of water quality monitoring will be sampled at all sites in the designated basin during base flow conditions according to the surface water quality monitoring program protocols;
- All sites will be characterized on-site for in-stream water quality measurements (temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity and turbidity).

Table 2 describes each of the stations as depicted in Figure 1. Station selection was based on an initial watershed reconnaissance, which focused upon suitable site configuration for stream sampling and location relative to key pollutant source inputs. Once final sampling locations were identified, latitude and longitude coordinates were obtained with a Global Positioning System (GPS) unit and recorded.

Standard operating procedures (SOPs) referenced in the following sections are provided in Appendix A.

Table 2 Base Flow Sampling Locations

Station ID	Stream	Location	Study Basin
BLC0.3	Banklick	Route 177 at Banklick	Central
BLC1.2	Banklick	Route 16 bridge on Winston Avenue	Central
BLC3.9	Banklick	Eaton Drive bridge	Central
BLC8.1	Banklick	Richardson Road bridge	Central
BLC11.6	Banklick	Independence Station Road	Central
BLC15.6	Banklick	Maher Road bridge	Central
BPC0.1	Bullock Pen	Bridge on Bullock Pen Road	Central
FWC0.1	Fowler	Bridge on Marshall Road	Central
BMC0.7	Bowman	Bridge on 177, park on Conley Rd.	Central
CRC2.5	Cruises	Bridge on Hempfling Road	Central
CRC8.1	Cruises	USGS Station on Route 17 near Piner, KY	Central
DCC0.4	DeCoursey	Locust Pike Road	Central
DCC2.2	DeCoursey	Bridge on Porter Rd off Rt 177	Central
GRC0.5	Grassy	Bridge on Rt 177, just passed the Pendleton Co. line	Central
LIR0.5	Licking	5 th St Bridge in Covington	Central
LIR4.9	Licking	Kenton County Water Intake	Central
LIR19.3	Licking	Visalia Bridge on Rt 536	Central
LIR35.5	Licking	Bridge @ Butler, KY	Central
PHC2.3	Phillips	Gravel pull off on side of Morningview Rd.	Central
PLC1.8	Plum	Bridge @ intersection of Hissem and Aulick Rd	Central
POC0.9	Pond	Bridge on Indian Trace @ intersection with Joann Ln	Central
RFC0.9	Rifle	Rt 915 south of Licking Valley Baptist Church	Central
SCC0.6	Scaffold	Bridge on Rifle Range Rd off Rt 915	Central
STC1.2	Steep	Bridge on Case Rd off Steep Cr. Rd	Central
THC0.4	Threemile	USGS Station on Johns Hill Rd	Central
THC0.5-NBT0.8	North Branch Threemile	Moock Rd, bridge to Woodland Hills Condos	Central
THC1.4	Threemile	Gibson Lane	Central
FMC0.5	Fourmile	Silver Grove Pump Station off Rt 8	East
FMC6.9	Fourmile	USGS Gage Station on Poplar Ridge Rd	East
FMC8.2	Fourmile	Off 547, bridge on Appleblossom Ln	East
OWC0.4	Owl	Rt 547 to Owl Creek Road	East
TUC0.4	Tug	Bridge on Darlington Road	East
TEC1.3	Tenmile	Intersection of Ten Mile and Fender Rd	East
TIC0.2	Threemile	Upstream of Highland Heights PS on Blangey Rd	East
TYC0.6	Taylor	USGS Station on Donnermeyer Dr under I-471	East
TYC1.6-UNT0.4	Taylor	Alexandria Pike in Southgate, KY	East
TYC0.9-WLC1.3	Woodlawn	Waterworks Road	East
TYC0.7-CVR0.2	Covert Run	Across from Ben Flora Gym on Tiger Lane	East
TMC1.9	Twelvemile	Bridge @ intersection of 1566 & 2921	East
TMC3.0	Twelvemile	USGS Gage Station on 1997	East
TMC3.9	Twelvemile	Bridge on Route 10	East
TMC9.3	Twelvemile	Intersection of Route 10 and California Cross Rds	East

Table 2 continued

BRC0.3	Brush	Bridge on Route 10	East
BRC2.0	Brush	Eastern Regional Water Reclamation Facility	East
DRC1.4	Dry	Bridge @ Dry Creek WWTP	North
DRC4.4	Dry	On Eubanks Rd of Anderson Rd off Buttermilk	North
DRC5.9	Dry	Bridge on Shinkle Rd in residential area	North
DRC3.0-WFD1.5	Dry	Bridge on Erlanger Rd off Houston Rd	North
EJC0.3	Elijah	Bridge on Rt 8	North
EJC2.8	Elijah	USGS gage station on Elijah Creek Rd	North
GAC1.7	Garrison	First bridge on Garrison Cr. Rd.	North
PRC0.3	Pleasant	Bridge on Oak St	North
PRC2.0	Pleasant	Bridge over Bromley Crescent Springs Rd @ Amsterdam	North
PRC0.4-UNT0.0	Pleasant	Oak Street behind the BINGO hall	North
SDR0.6	Sand	End of Rt 8, beyond end of state maintenance	North
SDR4.0	Sand	Thornwilde Subdivision	North
SEC1.6	Second	End of Second Creek Road	North
TAC0.5	Taylor	Lawrenceburg Ferry Rd	North
WPC1.4	Woolper	Bridge on Rt 20	North
WPC5.0	Woolper	USGS station on Woolper Rd	North
WPC8.8	Woolper	Bridge on Rt 338	North
ALF0.1	Allen Fork	Huffman-Clifford Bridge on Easton Lane from Rt 338	North
ASF0.0	Ashbys Fork	Intersection of Ashby & Woolper Rd	North
BBC3.9	Big Bone	Off Rt 1925 to Bender Rd	West
MLC3.0	Mud Lick	USGS Station, bridge @ US 42	West
MLC12.0	Mud Lick	Richwood pump station, on Rt 338	West
BSF1.8	Big South Fork	US 42 to bridge on South Fork Church Rd	West
MCF1.7	McCoys Fork	I-75 to Walton-Verona exit	West
GPC4.6	Gunpowder	Sullivan road; path by bus turn around	West
GPC14.7	Gunpowder	USGS gage station and SD1 pump station	West
GPC17.9	Gunpowder	Oakbrook Rd and Limaburg Rd	West
SFG2.6	South Fork Gunpowder	Woodcreek Rd bridge off Pleasant Valley	West
SFG5.3	South Fork Gunpowder	Bridge on Gunpowder Rd to Grace Fellowship Church	West
LAC1.4	Landing	Bridge on Rt 338 at inter.of Big Bone Church/Ryle Rd	West
LIC1.6	Lick	Bridge on Rt 338, near East Bend Power Plant	West
MDC1.8	Middle	Bridge on Waterloo Road	West
MDC5.5	Middle	Middle Creek Road by barn	West

3.1 On-Site Water Quality Measurements

All sites will be subject to on-site measurements during sampling events. On-site measurements will include DO, pH, temperature, conductivity and turbidity.

On-site water quality instrumentation will be calibrated and maintained in accordance with Standard Operating Procedures Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation.

3.2 Dry Weather Sampling

Most sampling locations are accessible by bridges or by wading during dry weather. A minimum of 72 hours without precipitation will be required prior to the beginning of a sampling event, and dry weather conditions must prevail throughout sampling.

Table 3 presents the monitoring schedule for the surface water sampling program for dry weather monitoring. All sampling will be performed by SD1 staff. Base flow samples will be collected as grab samples in accordance with Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples. Dry weather sampling events will be completed by basin, utilizing two person crews as described in Table 3.

All grab samples will be collected with a sampling pole, stainless steel bucket or glove method. Sampling events will start at the downstream site and progress upstream. This approach to dry weather sampling is designed to collect a representative sample of base flow conditions in the stream. Immediately after sample collection, on-site measurements will be taken as previously described.

Table 3 Base Flow Monitoring Schedule

Study Basin	Watershed	# of Sites	Base flow (1 Basin/year)			
			2016	2017	2018	2019
Central	Licking	4		X		
Central	Banklick	8		X		
Central	Threemile	3		X		
Central	Bowman	1		X		
Central	Cruises	2		X		
Central	Decoursey	2		X		
Central	Grassy	1		X		
Central	Phillips	1		X		
Central	Plum	1		X		
Central	Pond	1		X		
Central	Riffle	1		X		
Central	Scaffold	1		X		
Central	Steep	1		X		
		27		27		
East	Fourmile	5	X			
East	Twelvemile	6	X			
East	Taylor	4	X			
East	Tenmile	1	X			
East	Threemile	1	X			
		17	17			
North	Woolper	5			X	
North	Elijahs	2			X	
North	Dry Creek	4			X	
North	Pleasant Run	3			X	
North	Sand Run	2			X	
North	Garrison	1			X	
North	Second	1			X	
North	Taylor	1			X	
		19			19	
West	Gunpowder	5				X
West	Big Bone	5				X
West	Landing	1				X
West	Lick	1				X
West	Middle	2				X
		14				14

3.3 Summary

Table 4 presents a summary of the field monitoring and sampling plan for Northern Kentucky watersheds.

Table 4 Summary of Water Quality Monitoring and Sampling Program

Type	Locations	Description	Parameters
Base flow Sampling	77 total locations, throughout Northern Kentucky 4 basins (North, Central, West, East)	<u>Dry Weather</u> ♦ 1 basin per year ♦ 1 grab sample per site	♦ On-site measurements will include: temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity and turbidity. ♦ Water quality parameters will include: bacteria (EC and FC), nitrogen (TKN, NH₃, NO₃-NO₂), phosphorus (total and ortho), total suspended solids, and CBOD₅.

Table 5 summarizes the number of samples to be collected exclusive of quality control protocols.

Table 5 Summary of Number of Samples to be Collected

Task	East Basin	Central Basin	North Basin	West Basin
<i>Year Sampled</i>	2016	2017	2018	2019
<i>No. of Events</i>	1	1	1	1
<i>No. of Sites</i>	17	27	19	14
Bacteria				
<i>E. coli</i>	17	27	19	14
Nutrients				
NH ₃	17	27	19	14
NO ₃ - NO ₂	17	27	19	14
TKN	17	27	19	14
Total Phosphorus	17	27	19	14
Ortho Phosphate (field filtered)	17	27	19	14
Solids				
TSS	17	27	19	14
Other				
CBOD ₅	17	27	19	14
Total Sample Load	136	216	152	112
QA/QC Samples are not included.				

4. FIELD MEASUREMENTS

In-stream dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, conductivity, and turbidity will be measured using appropriate field instruments concurrent with sample collection at each of the sampling locations. Each on-site parameter will be measured at each location during each sampling event. Table 6 lists the parameters, location of measurement at each site, and method of measurement.

Field measurements will be conducted following the Standard Operating Procedures in Appendix A. Field instruments will be calibrated before initiating monitoring activities for each event. A post-monitoring calibration check will also be conducted at the end of each monitoring event. All calibration and maintenance activities will be documented on the Multiprobe Instrumentation Calibration and QA Sheet (see Appendix A).

Measurements will be documented on the Field Data Sheet (see Appendix C). Documentation will include: date/time, location, type of measurement, personnel, equipment and associated calibration specifications, and general site observations (e.g., weather conditions).

Table 6. Field Measurements

Parameter	Location of Measurement	Method
Temperature	Mid-channel, mid-depth where possible	Hydrolab
Conductivity		
pH		
Dissolved Oxygen		
Turbidity		

5. SAMPLING HANDLING AND CUSTODY

The following sections outlines the sample labeling procedures, sample handling, chain-of-custody and record keeping required.

5.1 Sample Labeling

All samples will be assigned a unique identification code such that all necessary information can be attained from the sample label. The labels will be available in an electronic template and can be printed once the information has been added to the template. The code will identify the following:

Label: _ _ _ _ . _
 1 2 3 4 5

Characters 1-5: Sample Site ID

Example: FMC0.5

In addition to the label, the sample bottles will be clearly marked using waterproof ink with the following information:

- Client – SD1
- Analyses – List of requested analyses to be performed from the container
- Preservative – Preservative in sample container
- Date – Date sample was collected
- Time – Time sample was collected
- Crew – Crew identification

5.2 Sampling Collection, Handling and Transport

General guidelines for sample collection are listed below. Refer to Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples for detailed procedures.

- All samples collected in intermediate sampling containers should be transferred to their appropriate laboratory sample bottle as quickly as possible.
- Sampling location codes will be used to distinguish each distinct sampling location.
- Sample labels and chains of custody must be filled out completely.

The following procedures will be followed when handling and transporting samples:

- Samples will be preserved using ice and transported in sample coolers. It should be ensured that plenty of ice is used for each sample cooler to maintain the temperatures inside the cooler at approximately 4° C.
- Laboratory chain-of-custody forms will be included with all sample submissions. Field staff will keep copies.
- Sample bottles and coolers should be handled with care to prevent breakage/spillage.
- All sample bottle labels must be properly completed and placed firmly on each bottle by the field sampling crews.

5.3 Chain-of-Custody

Field crews will complete chain-of-custody forms to document the transfer of sample custody to the designated custodian and subsequent personnel, see Appendix B. Signatures of all personnel involved in the collection, transport, and receipt of each sample will be recorded on the chain-of-custody forms.

In certain instances, sample custody will be transferred to runners to transport the samples directly to the laboratory at designated times during sampling to avoid missing holding times. The chain-of-custody form outlines sample location, identification, collection time and date, and specific parameters to be analyzed for each sample. A properly completed chain-of-custody form must accompany all samples.

Use of the chain-of-custody form will terminate when laboratory personnel receive the samples and sign the form. The laboratory will open the sample coolers and carefully check the contents for evidence of leakage and to verify that samples were kept on ice. The laboratory will then verify that all information on the sample container label is correct and consistent with the chain-of-custody form. Any discrepancy between the sample bottle and the chain-of-custody form, any leaking sample containers, or any other abnormal situation will be reported to the Laboratory Manager. The Laboratory Manager will inform the Project Manager of any such problem, and corrective actions will be discussed and implemented.

5.4 Field Logs and Records

Field crews will document all activities associated with the monitoring program at each monitoring site, including unusual or anomalous conditions. In addition, a description of any problems encountered during the monitoring period and/or any deviations to the FMSP will also be documented. This information may subsequently be used for data interpretation and analyses.

All pertinent information will be recorded on Field Data Sheets which are included as Appendix C.

At the conclusion of each monitored event, all Field Data Sheets will be submitted to the Field Manager to serve as a chronological representation of the monitored event. At a minimum each data field sheet should include the following information:

- Project name, site/river name, sample type;
- Crew identification, date, start time/end time;
- Weather conditions, stream conditions, site conditions;
- Physical parameter data (on-site measurements);
- On-site water quality meter identification number used to measure physical parameter data;
- Field observations.

In addition, the recreational use survey form (also provided in Appendix A) will be completed at each site and submitted to the Field Manager at the conclusion of each monitored event. The recreational use survey should include the following information:

- Project name, site/river name, sample type;
- Crew identification, date, start time/end time;
- Photo file name and corresponding description;
- Description of recreational uses observed at the site; and,
- Description of other human evidence of use.

All entries will be completed with a permanent ink pen with no erasures, correction fluid, or tape used. Erroneous entries will be noted using a single line drawn through the mistake that is then dated and initialed.

5.5 *Sample Containers and Preservation*

Table 7 presents details of sample containers and preservatives to be used. The laboratory will provide all bottles pre-preserved.

Table 7 Guidelines for Sample Container Preparation and Preservation

Parameter	Container	Recommended Sample Volume	Preservation	Maximum Storage Time
Bacteria				
<i>E. coli</i>	Pre-Sterilized Polyethylene or Glass	120 ml	Add Na ₂ S ₂ O ₇ ¹ Refrigerate to 4°C	12 hours ²
Nutrients				
NH ₃ TKN NO ₃ -NO ₂ Total Phosphorus	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Add H ₂ SO ₄ , pH<2 Refrigerate to 4°C	28 days
Ortho Phosphate	Polyethylene or Glass	120 ml	Field filter Refrigerate to 4°C	48 hours
Conventional				
TSS	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Refrigerate to 4°C	7 days
CBOD ₅	Polyethylene or Glass	1000 ml	Refrigerate to 4°C	48 hours
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sodium Thiosulfate (Na₂S₂O₇) prevents continuation of bacteriocidal action. 2. The maximum allowable holding time for bacteria samples will be 12 hours with a goal of 6 hours when practical. 				

6. QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

The purpose of any quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) program is to ensure that all sampling protocols and procedures are followed such that samples are representative of the water quality to which they are associated. The program is designed to be a systematic process, which together with the laboratory QA/QC program ensures a high degree of confidence in the data collection. The proposed QA/QC program includes the following elements:

- Training of all field staff;
- Field quality control procedures;
- Equipment cleaning protocol;
- QA/QC samples; and,
- Equipment calibration.

6.1 Training

Training sessions will be carried out for all field staff on proper sampling, sample handling and submission and general field procedures. Specific emphasis will be placed on QA/QC issues as well as on health and safety. Field crews will receive

training involving the operation, maintenance and calibration of water quality meters, and all other on-site equipment used throughout the field program. SOPs for all program elements will be distributed to staff and available at all times.

6.2 **Field Quality Control**

The quality of data generated in a laboratory depends primarily on the integrity of the samples that arrive at the laboratory. Consequently, necessary precautions must be taken to protect samples from contamination and deterioration. Procedures detailed in Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples and Standard Operating Procedures for Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation will be followed to ensure field quality control.

6.3 **Equipment Cleaning Protocol**

All sampling equipment (i.e. intermediate containers, sampling buckets, etc.) will follow the QA/QC protocol outlined in Standard Operating Procedures for the Collection of Discrete Water Samples to ensure representative sample collection. When using the sampling pole or stainless steel bucket, only step 2 (Blank Water Rinse) of the decontamination procedure needs to be utilized.

6.4 **QA/QC Samples**

The monitoring team will use three types of QA/QC samples collected in the field to assist in validating chemical data sets – sample duplicates, equipment blanks, and field blanks. Each type of QA/QC sample is described in the following sections. Tables 8 and 9 present the schedule and number of QA/QC samples to be collected during the field program.

Table 8 QA/QC Sample Schedule

Crew	Dry Weather / Base Flow Sampling			
	East Basin	Central Basin	North Basin	West Basin
Day 1	BEB*, Dup, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, Dup, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, Dup, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, Dup, FB, MB, AEB*
Day 2	BEB*, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, FB, MB, AEB*	BEB*, FB, MB, AEB*
Day 3		BEB*, FB, MB, AEB*		
BEB = Before Equipment Blank MB= Method Blank Dup = Duplicate AEB = After Equipment Blank FB = Field Blank * = As needed				

Table 9 Number of QA/QC Samples

Base Flow Sampling	Field Blanks ²	Equipment Blanks ³	Method Blanks ⁴	Duplicate Samples ⁵	Total per Event
Day 1	1	6	1	1	18
Day 2	1	4	1	0	8
Day 3			1	0	
Totals	6	10	6	4	26
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Each QA/QC sample set is performed on the complete series of samples submitted for laboratory analysis.2. One set of field blanks per day will be collected during each day of the event.3. Two sets of equipment blanks (BEB, AEB) per day will be collected during each day of the event only if a bucket was used during sampling.4. One set of method blanks (at one site) per day will be collected during each day of the event.5. One set of duplicates (at one site) will be collected during each sampling event.					

6.4.1 Sample Duplicates

Sample duplicates will be collected for laboratory analysis for each parameter. The purpose of these analyses is to evaluate sample collection precision by comparing the duplicate analytical results. One set of duplicate samples at a sampling location, randomly identified, will be collected by each field crew during the sampling event. Duplicates will be rotated among streams between sampling rounds. Approximately 10 percent of the samples will be collected in duplicate.

6.4.2 Equipment Blanks

Equipment blanks will be collected for laboratory analysis for all parameters. The purpose of these analyses is to assess potential cross-contamination of samples by the equipment, including intermediate sample containers. These blanks will be taken before each sampling shift (BEB) and at the conclusion of each sampling shift (AEB) by each crew.

6.4.3 Method Blanks

Method blanks (MB) will be collected for laboratory analysis for orthophosphate only. The purpose of these analyses is to assess potential cross-contamination of samples by the method in which the sample was collected. These blanks will be taken at the conclusion of each sampling shift by each crew.

6.4.4 Field Blanks

Field blanks will be collected for laboratory analysis for all parameters. The purpose of these analyses is to determine if samples collected have been contaminated by

field handling and cleaning methods. Each field crew will collect these blanks immediately following the collection of the AEB equipment blanks.

6.5 *Equipment Calibration*

On-site physical parameters will be measured in-stream by water quality meters and recorded on data sheets. These instruments will be calibrated each sampling day before use according to the manufactures operating manual as outlined in *Standard Operating Procedures for Hydrolab Series 5 Water Quality Instrumentation*.

At the conclusion of the sampling event, each meter will be checked with the standards used during calibration. The purpose of these readings is to evaluate the meter's precision (electronic drift) by comparing the readings recorded during calibration and the readings recorded during the check at the end of the sampling day.

At the conclusion of each sampling event, all Calibration Sheets will be submitted to the Field Manager to serve as a record of the meter's performance during the sampling event.

7. *PROGRAM SAFETY*

The most critical component of a sampling program is crew safety. Safety is of paramount importance as stream sampling can be extremely dangerous. The element of danger is accentuated if personnel are unfamiliar with their surroundings and/or procedures, consequently staff must be properly trained in both safety and monitoring procedures, following a well thought out program.

With stream monitoring, common sense is essential. Two hazards that field staff may face more often, especially if wet weather occurs during sampling, are high stream conditions and slippery footing. If stream levels are deemed to be too high or too fast, under no circumstances should any field staff enter the stream or operate near its banks. With surfaces being wet and slippery, special care must be taken when walking and working around bridges.

Wading is one of the easiest methods to collect samples from many streams, and it may also be extremely dangerous. Wading permits the investigator to examine stream flow and decide where to sample. Rubber boots or even chest-high waders are standard equipment. If the wader has any uncertainty about their ability to wade a stream, they should be attached by a rope to a rigid mooring and wear an approved floatation device.

If creek conditions are high and fast, field staff will wear a safety belt or harness and will be appropriately tethered when working in close proximity to the creek. Along with being attached by rope, field staff must wear an approved floatation device.

There must be a minimum of two field staff working together during any sampling event.

7.1 General Safety Practices

- Water depth during wading operations must be checked with a pole before steps are taken.
- When wading equipment is worn, the support straps must be outside the clothing.
- In all situations field parties are required to leave accurate sampling schedules and expected itineraries in the office.
- Sampling must never be carried out in weather that is considered by the Field Manager or field member to be hazardous to the well-being of the field staff and/or equipment.
- Field staff are required to wear approved floatation devices and be tethered if conditions warrant use.
- First aid kits will be issued to all field crews.
- Each field crew will have a cellular phone and have been instructed on emergency procedures and numbers.
- Each field crew will report upon leaving and returning from any sampling or field work to their Field Manager.
- Each field crew will have appropriate lights, markers, etc. to be able to perform their work safely under poor visibility/nightfall.
- Each field crew will have the appropriate road safety equipment as required.

7.2 Health Hazards

Disease causing bacteria, viruses, and parasites are always present in sewers and discharge streams. They occur in both liquid sewage and dry sludge which coats pipes, and other surfaces. The serious threats are Hepatitis A (virus), Hepatitis B (virus), Tetanus (bacteria), Typhoid (bacteria), and Polio (virus). Proper hygiene methods must be followed. Wash hands before eating or smoking. Protective clothing must be laundered and equipment kept clean. Workers should avoid touching their eyes to prevent an inflammation. Cuts and abrasions of the skin should be covered by bandages or gloves to minimize the chance of infection by organisms.

APPENDIX A

STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES FOR FIELD MONITORING AND SAMPLING

Standard Operating Procedures
for the
Collection of Discrete Water Samples

Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No. 1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

Revision Number: 1
September 2006

Introduction

This document describes the procedures for the collection of discrete water samples in Northern KY watersheds by Sanitation District No.1. These methods allow for the collection of grab or composite samples utilizing various sample collection techniques. This standard operating procedures document (SOP) has been developed to maintain consistent data collection procedures, and to ensure the quality of the data collected.

1.0.0 Field Equipment

The following equipment is needed to implement the sampling techniques.

- Stainless Steel Bucket w/ Rope
- Sampling Pole
- Kemmerer Sampling Bottle Kit
- Churn Sample Splitter
- Chemical Decontamination Agent (Solvent or Weak Acid)
- Chemical Waste Bucket
- Blank Water (Distilled or Reagent Grade Deionized – RGDI)
- Sample Bottles
- Coolers and Ice
- Scrub Brush
- Disposable Gloves
- Field Sampling Plan
- Permanent Marker (Sharpie)

Individuals handling solvents or acids should wear rubber gloves and eye protection to prevent possible injuries.

The following parameters can be collected with the ensuing sampling techniques: bacteria (fecal coliform and *E. coli*), oxygen demand (BOD₅, CBOD₅, COD), chlorophyll *a*, nutrients (total phosphorus, orthophosphate, nitrate-nitrite, Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen, ammonia), total hardness, metals, and solids (TSS, TDS).

Refer to Attachment 1 for an alternative collection procedure for parameters that do not require preservatives utilizing the glove method.

Refer to Attachment 2 for filtration procedures for orthophosphate collection.

2.0.0 Preparation

Before collecting samples, properly fill out the label (date, time, sampling point, sample ID number, analysis required, preservative, and the name of the collecting entity and sampling crew member) on all bottles using a permanent marker and affix the labels to the bottles. Ideally, the labels are filled out (except date and time) and attached to the sample bottles before the sampling event occurs. In addition to the sample label, identify the lid of each container with the sample ID number using the permanent marker.

Prior to collecting samples, both the coolers and the sample bottles should be visually inspected for presence of any dirt, chemicals, or other contaminants. If a sample bottle has any contaminants present, discard it and use another. The coolers should be wiped down or washed with a mild soap and thoroughly rinsed if it has any contaminants present. In addition all sampling equipment must be inspected for proper operation.

The sampler's hands should be washed with a mild soap and water immediately before the sampling event begins. When actually collecting the samples, disposable gloves shall be worn and care taken to avoid touching or otherwise contaminating the inner surface of the sample bottles or lids.

3.0.0 Procedures

Keep all sampling bottles closed until they are ready to be filled. At each collection site, the sampler will wear a new set of gloves for decontamination procedures and new set of gloves for sample collection. If sampling from a boat or structure, collect the sample from the upstream side. Avoid placing the sampling device in contact with the streambed or bank. Once the sample is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

3.1.0 Stainless Steel Bucket

Prior to sampling, the stainless steel bucket must be inspected to ensure that it is in good condition, and that the nylon rope is not torn or frayed.

3.1.1 Decontamination Procedures

The stainless steel bucket must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Discard the detergent solution.
- Rinse the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Chemical Rinse – Solvent or Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the inside of the bucket thoroughly with the chemical.
- Discard the chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water into the waste container.

Step 3 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the outer lip and the inside of the bucket with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat Step 3.

3.1.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete surface grab samples (most often used for shallow water sampling from a bridge or stream bank) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- Rinse the bucket with river water by submerging the bucket into the stream at the collection site.
- Remove the bucket from the stream and discard its contents downstream of where the sample will be collected.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Lower the bucket into the stream to obtain a surface grab sample.
- Remove the bucket from the stream.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

3.2.0 Sampling Pole

The pole must be inspected to ensure it is clean and all parts are working properly. Prior to sampling, ensure the bottle is properly attached and snapper band is securely fastened. Once pole is extended, verify that the locking mechanism is secured.

3.2.1 Decontamination Procedures

The sampling pole and bottle attachment must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the entire pole with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Discard the detergent solution.
- Rinse the entire pole with blank water.
- Discard the blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the bottle attachment with blank water.
- Discard blank water.
- Repeat Step 2.

3.2.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete surface grab samples (most often used for shallow water sampling from a bridge or stream bank) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – Sample Collection

- Attach a clean unpreserved bottle onto the pole.
- Lower the bottle into the stream to obtain a surface grab sample.
- Make sure the bottle does not touch the bottom of the stream and try to avoid floating debris entering the bottle.
- Remove the bottle from the stream.
- Repeat as necessary to fill the required sample bottles. (Attempt to proportional divide the sample volume equally between sample bottles in order to average out any temporal variations.)
- Detach the bottle from the pole and:
 - a) If using a sample bottle, place in the cooler.
 - b) If using a transfer bottle, discard when finished.

3.3.0 Kemmerer Sampling Bottle

Prior to sampling, the Kemmerer must be inspected to ensure that the triggering mechanism is functioning properly, and that the nylon rope is not torn or frayed.

3.3.1 Decontamination Procedures

The Kemmerer must be cleaned before each sample is collected.

Step 1 – Chemical Rinse – Solvent or Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer thoroughly with the chemical.
- Purge a small amount of the chemical from the drain valve into the waste container.
- Open the top and discard the remaining chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the drain valve into the waste container.
- Open the top and discard the remaining blank water into the waste container.

Step 2 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the inside of the Kemmerer with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the drain valve.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat Step 2.

3.3.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Discrete water column grab samples (most often used for deep water sampling from a boat) are collected using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- Open the Kemmerer bottle.
- Rinse the Kemmerer with river water by submerging it into the stream at the collection site.
- Remove the Kemmerer from the stream.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Lower the Kemmerer to the appropriate depth (utilize the boat fathometer to determine mid-depth and bottom depth).
 - a) Surface – Lower the Kemmerer to a depth of approximately one-foot below the surface.
 - b) Mid-Depth – Lower the Kemmerer to the appropriate depth.
 - c) Bottom – Lower the Kemmerer to a depth of approximately two-feet from the bottom (If Kemmerer contacts bottom sediment, repeat decontamination procedures before sample collection).
- Activate the closing mechanism of the Kemmerer to acquire sample volume.
- Remove the Kemmerer from the stream.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the drain valve.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

3.4.0 Churn Sample Splitter

Prior to sampling, the churn sample splitter must be inspected to ensure that it is in good condition, and that it is functioning properly.

3.4.1 Decontamination Procedures

The churn sample splitter must be cleaned before sub-samples are homogenized. In addition, the appropriate sample collection device must also be cleaned (stainless steel bucket – 3.1, sampling pole – 3.2 or Kemmerer – 3.3).

Step 1 – Alconox Detergent Wash (Optional)

- Using a small brush, scrub the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with an Alconox detergent solution (blank water).
- Purge a small amount of the wash solution from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining detergent solution.
- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat the rinsing cycle until all the detergent has been removed.

Step 2 – Chemical Rinse – Weak Acid (Optional)

- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter thoroughly with the chemical.
- Purge a small amount of the chemical from the spigot into the waste container.
- Discard the remaining chemical into the waste container.
- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot into the waste container.
- Discard the remaining blank water into the waste container.

Step 3 – Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the plunger and the inside of the churn splitter with blank water.
- Purge a small amount of the blank water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining blank water.
- Repeat Step 3.

3.4.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Sub-samples (vertical or horizontal), obtained with a stainless steel bucket, sampling pole or Kemmerer bottle are homogenized into composite samples using the following procedures.

Step 1 – River Rinse

- River rinse by filling the churn splitter with the sampling device at the collection site.
- Purge a small amount of the stream water from the spigot.
- Discard the remaining contents.

Step 2 – Sample Collection

- Obtain sub-samples following either stainless steel bucket, sampling pole, or Kemmerer collection procedures.
- Fill the churn splitter with approximately equal volumes from each sub-sample.

Step 3 – Homogenizing Sub-samples

- Mix the contents of the churn splitter, at a uniform churning rate, for 10 strokes prior to withdrawal of the first sample.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the spigot.
- While continuing to churn the sample volume, fill the required sample bottles.

4.0.0 Quality Assurance

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

4.1.0 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate grab samples fill the required bottles from the same stainless steel bucket, sampling pole, or Kemmerer. To collect duplicate composite samples fill the required bottles from the Churn Splitter sample volume.

4.2.0 Blanks

Blanks should be collected during each day of the survey. The sampler should wear a new set of gloves for each blank processed. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

4.2.1 Field Blanks

Pour blank water from an unopened container directly into the sample bottle.

4.2.2 Equipment Blanks

Equipment blanks should be collected at the beginning and end of each survey day.

Stainless Steel Bucket

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the stainless steel bucket with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

Sampling Pole

- The method for this device does not require a blank.

Kemmerer Bottle

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the Kemmerer with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the Kemmerer.
- Fill the required sample bottles.

Churn Sample Splitter

- Perform the “Blank Water Rinse” (Decontamination Procedure) for a total of three rinses.
- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer or stainless steel bucket) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottles.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Pour the blank water from the collection device into the churn splitter.
- Mix the contents of the churn splitter, at a uniform churning rate, for 10 strokes prior to withdrawal of the first sample.
- Purge a small amount of sample volume from the spigot.
- While continuing to churn the sample volume, fill the required sample bottles.

4.2.3 Trip Blanks (Optional)

Depending on study design, a trip blank may be utilized. This is a sample of RGDI water taken from the laboratory to the sampling site and returned to the laboratory unopened.

5.0.0 Chain of Custody Procedures

All samples are to be recorded on a Chain of Custody form with its identifying information. The Chain of Custody form is to be signed and submitted to the laboratory along with the samples.

Attachment 1

Collection of Unpreserved Parameters Utilizing the Glove Method

Introduction

This attachment describes the procedures for the collection of grab samples into unpreserved bottles utilizing the glove method. This method has been implemented to eliminate the use of sampling equipment (i.e. stainless steel bucket or Kemmerer) for collecting surface samples. The elimination of equipment reduces cleaning procedures and possible sources of contamination. In addition, this method significantly reduces sampling time.

1.0 Field Equipment

The following equipment is needed to implement the Glove Method collection technique.

- Disposable Gloves
- Sterilized Unpreserved Sample Bottles
- Cooler and Ice
- Permanent Marker (Sharpie)
- 1 Gallon Container of Blank Water (Distilled or RGDI)
- Anti-Bacteria Soap
- Knife

2.0 Preparation

Before collecting the sample, properly fill out the label (date, time, sampling point, sample ID number, analysis required, preservative and the name of the collecting entity and crew member) using a permanent marker and affix the label to the bottle. Ideally, the label is filled out (except data and time) and attached to the sample bottle before the sampling event occurs. In addition to the sample label, identify the lid of the bottle with the sample ID number using the permanent marker.

Prior to collecting samples, both the coolers and the sample bottles should be visually inspected for presence of any dirt, chemicals, or other contaminants. If a sample bottle has any contaminants present, discard it and use another. The coolers may be wiped down or washed with a mild soap and thoroughly rinsed if they have any contaminants present.

The sampler's hands should be washed with anti-bacteria soap and water immediately before the sampling event begins. When actually collecting the samples, disposable gloves shall be worn and care taken to avoid touching or otherwise contaminating the inner surface of the bottle or lid.

3.0 Procedures

Keep sample bottles closed until they are to be filled. At the collection site, the sampler will wear a new set of gloves and detach the lock mechanism from the lid. Fill the bottle by holding the bottle upright and plunging it into the stream directed toward the current. Keep the lid closed (so as not to lose the dechlorination tablet) until you have reached a depth of 6 to 12 inches below the surface. When the sample is collected, leave ample air space in the bottle to facilitate mixing by shaking. Avoid placing the sample bottle in contact with the streambed or bank. If sampling from a boat or structure, collect the sample from the upstream side.

Fill the bottle to the appropriate level (if more water is collected than needed, carefully pour out the excess) and properly close the lid. If taking a bacteria sample shake the bottle for 30 seconds to expedite dissolving the dechlorination tablet.

After the sample is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice. A new set of sterile gloves will be worn for each sample collected.

4.0 QA Samples

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

4.1 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate samples, plunge bottles into the river and fill one immediately after another.

4.2 Blanks

Blanks should be collected at the completion of each survey day. The sampler should wear a new set of gloves for each blank processed. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

4.2.1 Field Blank

Pour blank water from an unopened gallon container directly into the sample bottle.

4.2.2 Method Blank

With a clean pocketknife, cut off the top of the container used for the first field blank. Simulate stream collection by plunging the bottle, while wearing gloves, into the cut open gallon container. Keep the bottle upright and let the water flow over the top of the bottle until it is filled.

5.0 Chain of Custody Procedures

All samples are to be recorded on a Chain of Custody form with its identifying information. The Chain of Custody form is to be signed and submitted to the laboratory along with the samples.

If the sample bottles used have a tie, this tie must be cut in order to open the bottle, and should provide a measure of sample security and integrity.

6.0 Reference

USEPA. 1978. Microbiological Methods for Monitoring the Environment, Water and Wastes. Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio. EPA/600/8-78/017.

Attachment 2

Collection of Orthophosphate Samples

Introduction

This attachment describes the additional procedures needed for the collection of orthophosphate samples.

1.0 Additional Field Equipment

The following additional equipment is needed to implement the orthophosphate filtration method.

- Disposable 60cc Syringes (Luer-Lok tip)
- Disposable 25 mm Filter Cartridges (1µm Glass Fiber Filter and 0.45µm Nylon Membrane Filter)
- Sample Bottles

2.0 Procedures

A new disposable syringe and filter cartridge (syringe filtration unit) will be used for each sample.

2.1 Decontamination Procedures

The syringe filtration units must be cleaned before each sample is filtered.

Step 1 - Blank Water Rinse

- Rinse the inside of the syringe by plunging 50mls of blank water through the housing.
- Attach the filter cartridge to the syringe.
- Rinse the inside of the entire unit by plunging 50mls of blank water through the unit.

2.2 Sample Collection Procedures

Samples can be filtered from the Kemmerer bottle, sampling pole, stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter using the following procedures.

Step 1 – Sample Filtration/Collection

Fill the syringe filtration unit with sample from the appropriate collection device.

Place the plunger into the syringe.

Purge a small amount of sample volume through the filter.

Discharge water through the filtration unit into a sample bottle.

Repeat the previous three bullets until enough sample has been filtered into the sample bottle.

Discard the syringe filtration unit.

3.0 Quality Assurance

Quality assurance samples should comprise at least 10 percent of the total number of stream samples collected.

3.1 Duplicate Samples

To collect duplicate samples continue to fill the syringe filtration unit from the same Kemmerer, sampling pole, or stainless steel bucket drop and filter into the required bottles.

3.2 Blanks

Blanks should be collected during each day of the survey. Once the blank is collected and sealed, the sample bottle should be immediately placed in a cooler and covered with crushed ice.

3.2.1 Field Blanks

Pour blank water from an unopened container directly into the sample bottle.

3.2.2 Equipment Blanks

Equipment blanks should be collected at the beginning and end of each survey day.

Unfiltered Equipment Blank

An equipment blank utilizing the appropriate collection device should be collected at the beginning of each survey day.

- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer, sampling pole (utilize clean transfer bottle), stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottle.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Fill the required sample bottle.

Filtered Equipment Blank

An equipment blank utilizing the syringe filtration unit should be collected at the end of each survey day. The syringe filtration unit is decontaminated using the previously outlined procedure before the blank is collected.

- Fill the appropriate collection device (Kemmerer, sampling pole (utilize clean transfer bottle), stainless steel bucket, or churn splitter) with enough blank water to fill the sample bottle.
- Purge a small amount of blank water from the appropriate collection device.
- Fill the syringe filtration unit with sample from the appropriate collection device.
- Place the plunger into the syringe.
- Purge a small amount of blank water through the filter.
- Discharge water through the filtration unit into a sample bottle.
- Repeat the previous three bullets until enough volume has been filtered into the sample bottle.
- Discard the syringe filtration unit.

Standard Operating Procedures
for
Hydrolab Series 5
Water Quality Instrumentation

Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017
(859) 578-7460

Revision Number: 1
August 2006

Introduction

This document contains information and directions on using Hydrolab water quality instrumentation (DS5 Water Quality Multiprobe and Surveyor® 4a Water Quality Data Display). This standard operating procedures document (SOP) has been developed to maintain properly functioning equipment, and to ensure the quality of the data collected.

1.0.0 Instrumentation Maintenance

The following procedures are to be utilized to maintain the Hydrolab instrumentation.

1.1.0 DS5 Multiprobe

The outside housing of the sonde should be kept free of sediments, bio-films, oils, etc. by cleaning with soap and water. The storage cup must be installed (filled with tap water) at all times when the unit is not in use to protect the sensors from damage and from drying out. Refer to section 6.1.1 of the *DS5 User's Manual*. The unit's operating range is 23°F to 122°F (-5°C to 50°C). Exposure of the unit to temperatures outside of this range may result in mechanical or electronic damage. Refer to section 5.1.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual*. The DS5 contains an internal lithium system battery that is good for approximately two years. Refer to section 6.2.3 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for replacement procedures.

1.1.1 Temperature Sensor

The temperature sensor should be kept clean from deposits, otherwise it does not require any scheduled maintenance. Refer to section 6.9 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

1.1.2 Luminescent Dissolved Oxygen (LDO) Sensor

LDO sensor is not affected by fouling or other debris, unless the growth is an organism that locally consumes or produces oxygen, such as barnacles, or algae growing on the sensor cap. Nevertheless, the manufacturer recommends periodic maintenance to remove contaminants such as oil, biological growth, dirt, etc. Sensor maintenance should be conducted after every deployment cycle. Refer to the Instruction Sheet – **Hach LDO Sensor** in the *DS5 User's Manual*. Yearly maintenance of the sensor should include the replacement of the sensor cap.

1.1.3 pH Sensor

The pH reference electrolyte and porous reference junction should be replaced at least twice a year. Refer to section 6.8 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for these procedures. The pH glass electrode can be generally cleaned with a cotton ball/"Q" tip using mild detergent and water; while a cotton ball/"Q" tip with methanol can be used to remove any oil, sediment or biological growth on the glass, as needed. Once maintenance has been performed on the sensor, the sensor should re-equilibrate for approximately 12 hours in tap water before it is calibrated, especially if methanol has been used. If the 12-hour re-equilibrate period cannot be met, record the estimated re-equilibrate time in the Comments section of the Sanitation District No.1 Multiprobe Instrumentation Calibration & QA Sheet and note if stable "instream" readings are achievable before calibration.

1.1.4 Conductivity Sensor

The annular rings inside the slot in the sensor housing of the conductivity sensor should be cleaned with a small bottle brush using a mild detergent and water, as needed. Methanol and a cotton swab should be used to remove any films or deposits on the electrodes. Refer to section 6.6 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for these procedures.

1.1.5 Self-Cleaning Turbidity Sensor

The self-cleaning turbidity sensor offers higher accuracy turbidity measurements and a wiper mechanism to reduce the effects of fouling. An internal motor automatically wipes the optical face at the start of every measurement. Turbidity sensor maintenance is required when any of the optical surfaces have a coating, or when a zero check using Hach StablCal <0.1 reads >0.9 NTU. Refer to the Instruction Sheet – **Self-Cleaning Turbidity Sensor** in the *DS5 User's Manual*. During unattended deployment, the turbidity wiper should be replaced every 3 months, or as needed (a gap should not be present between the wiper and the lens after reattachment).

1.1.6 Depth Sensor

The depth sensor generally does not need maintenance. If deposits (calcium, biological growth, etc.) begin forming in the port rinse with a very weak acid, such as acetic. Refer to the Sensor Specific Instruction Sheet of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

1.1.7 Circulator

The circulator is used during deployment to ensure adequate flow across the sensors for reliable readings. Refer to section 6.1.3 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

1.1.8 Internal Battery Power

The DS5 contains an optional internal battery pack that is installed during manufacturing that consists of 8 “C” alkaline batteries that provide 12 volts when fully charged. When the battery pack becomes exhausted (below 6.4 volts) the batteries should be replaced in order for the logger to continue unattended monitoring. Refer to section 6.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for replacement procedures. The DS5 also contains an internal lithium system battery that is good for approximately two years. Refer to section 6.2.3 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for replacement procedures.

1.2.0 Surveyor® 4a Data Display

The data display should be protected from mechanical shock and excessive vibrations. The unit's operating range is 23°F to 122°F (-5°C to 50°C). Exposure of the unit to temperatures outside of this range may result in mechanical or electronic damage. Refer to section 3.1 of the *Surveyor 4 User's Manual* for maintenance and cleaning procedures.

1.2.1 Surveyor® 4a Internal Battery Power

The Surveyor 4a contains an internal 7.2-volt rechargeable nickel metal hydride battery. The battery power is exhausted at 6.5 volts and should be recharged for approximately 3.5 hours to ensure a full charge. The Surveyor 4a also contains an internal lithium system battery that is good for approximately two years. Refer to section 3.1 of the *Surveyor 4 User's Manual* for charging and replacement procedures.

1.2.2 Internal Barometer

The barometric pressure sensor does not require any scheduled maintenance. The sensor should be calibrated every six months and checked monthly with an accurate mercury barometer or the barometric pressure provided by the local weather service, corrected to site altitude. Refer to appendix 3 of the *Surveyor 4 User's Manual*.

1.3.0 External Rechargeable Battery Pack

The external rechargeable battery pack provides 12 volts when fully charged. The battery pack is exhausted below 9 volts and should be recharged for 12 hours to ensure a full charge. To prevent “charge memory”, recharge the battery pack only when the battery power is exhausted. Refer to section 3.3 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

1.4.0 Cables

Cables should be kept clean and protected from abrasion, unnecessary tension, repetitive flexure (fatigue), and bending over sharp radii (such as a bridge railing). Connections that plug into terminals are not waterproof and should be kept dry at all times. When cables are not in use, be sure to insert all dummy plugs and dust caps to protect the electrical connectors. Refer to section 6.3.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

1.5.0 Flow Cell

The pressure in the flow cell should not exceed 15psi. Refer to section 5.2.5 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

2.0.0 Instrumentation Setup

Communication to the *DS5* for setup or calibration can be established via the *Surveyor 4a* or a computer using Hydras 3LT software. The following settings should be configured for normal operation.

2.1.0 Parameter Display

For routine monitoring the following parameter display should be utilized. Refer to section 4.1 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

- Date/Time Format – MDY/HMS
- Temperature – Celsius
- LDO – mg/L
- LDO – Percent Saturation
- pH – units
- Specific Conductance – $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$
- Turbidity – NTU
- Depth25 – Feet
- Battery – Choose appropriate display (internal vs. external and/or volts vs. % remaining)
- Radix – Decimal Point
- Interval – 000001

2.2.0 Parameter Setup

For routine monitoring, the following sensor setup should be utilized. Refer to section 4.1 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

- Specific Conductance – mS/cm, Fresh Water Temperature Compensation, Autorange
- Salinity – ppt, Method 2311

2.2.1 Using the Surveyor for Parameter Setup

Refer to section 4.1.1 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

2.2.2 Using Hydras 3 LT for Parameter Setup

Refer to section 4.1.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

2.2.0 System Setup

For routine monitoring the following system setup should be utilized. Refer to *DS5 User's Manual* for additional information.

- Circulator – On during use, Off during calibration
- Audio – Off during normal profiling use, On during logging runs
- Terminal Baud Rate – 19200
- Autolog – Off during normal profiling use, On during logging runs

2.3.0 SDI-12 Setup

For SDI-12 communications with an external data logger the following setup should be utilized. Refer to **Appendix B External Communications** of the *DS5 User's Manual*.

- SDI Address – 1
- SDI Delay – 120 (Note: multiprobe has 5 second built in delay, thus actual delay = 125)

3.0.0 Instrumentation Calibration

Refer to section 4.2 of the *DS5 Users Manual* for sensor calibration procedures. The multiprobe and the standards must be at thermal equilibrium before the calibration procedures are performed. If a stand is used to hold the sonde during calibration, secure the sonde only around the end caps, **never** around the housing. Use either distilled or deionized water as rinse water during the calibration procedures. The multiprobe should be calibrated and post checked after each use to track any electronic drift. Record all calibration information on the Sanitation District No.1 Multiprobe Instrumentation Calibration & QA Sheet – Attachment A.

3.1.0 Procedures

Multiprobe calibration is performed using the stated procedures for each parameter as described. If calibration fails, refer to the appropriate section under Multiprobe Maintenance, Section 6.1 of the *DS5 User's Manual*. After performing the recommended maintenance, reattempt the calibration procedure.

The multiprobe sensor accuracy for each parameter (utilizing certified standards) is stated as follows:

LDO: ± 0.1 mg/L (0 - 8 mg/L)	Conductivity: $\pm 1\%$ of reading (± 10 μ S/cm for a 1000 standard)
± 0.2 mg/L (>8 mg/L)	Turbidity: $\pm 1\%$ (0 - 100 NTUs)
pH: ± 0.2 units	$\pm 5\%$ (400 – 3,000 NTUs)

3.2.0 Temperature

The temperature sensor is factory-set and does not require further calibration. Refer to section 4.2.4 of the *DS5 User's Manual*. The accuracy of the sensor is $\pm 0.1^\circ\text{C}$.

3.3.0 Luminescent Dissolved Oxygen (LDO)

There are three standard methods for calibrating the LDO sensor. Each method requires a single point calibration for measurement of concentration in mg/l. In order to calibrate the sensor for percent saturation reading, the local barometric pressure (corrected to local altitude above sea level) must be determined independently by the user and input into the software during calibration. Once calibrated, the sensor reading is verified to an oxygen solubility calculation as a QA/QC check. Refer to the Sanitation District No.1 Multiprobe Instrumentation Dissolved Oxygen Calibration Technical Sheet (Attachment B) for the elevation correction factors and the oxygen solubility calculation. In order to retain calibration accuracy between multiple deployments, store with sensor fully immersed in water at all times. Calibration will be completed by using of Method 1 – **Air Saturated Water**. Refer to the Instruction Sheet – **Hach LDO Sensor** in the *DS5 User's Manual*.

3.4.0 pH

Refer to section 4.2.8 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for pH calibration procedures. Since in-stream pH levels are generally above 7.0, the pH sensor is calibrated using a standard of 10.0 to determine the slope. If levels below 7.0 are expected, calibrate using a standard of 4.0 to determine the slope.

3.5.0 Conductivity

Refer to section 4.2.5 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for specific conductance calibration procedures. Since in-stream conductivity concentrations are generally below 1000 μ S/cm the specific conductance sensor is calibrated using a standard of 1000 μ S/cm to determine the slope. If lower concentrations are expected, calibrate using a standard of 500 μ S/cm to determine the slope.

3.6.0 Turbidity

Refer to the Instruction Sheet – **Self-Cleaning Turbidity Sensor** in the *DS5 User's Manual* for turbidity calibration procedures. Since in-stream turbidity readings can be highly variable the turbidity sensor is calibrated using a standard of 800 NTUs to determine the slope. If the sensor fails to properly calibrate, reset the sensor.

3.7.0 Depth

Refer to the **Sensor Specific Instruction Sheet** of the *DS5 User's Manual* for depth calibration procedures. The depth sensor is zeroed in air at the monitoring site to account for the current barometric pressure.

3.8.0 Time

Refer to the **Sensor Specific Instruction Sheet** of the *DS5 User's Manual* to enter the correct time (HHMMSS) and date (MMDDYY).

3.9.0 Quality Assurance/Quality Control

The following procedures are to be utilized to preserve and maintain QA/QC for the calibration of the Hydrolab instrumentation.

3.9.1 QA Standards

Calibration standards may be reused between calibration periods by employing procedures that prevent contamination. Only the quantity of standard used during the actual sensor calibration is saved for reuse. The quantity of standard used for the sensor rinse should always be discarded. Refer to the appropriate calibration section for each sensor in the *DS5 User's Manual*. Standard that is retained for reuse is kept in clean polyethylene bottles with Teflon sealed caps. Used standard is never remixed with the certified standard in the original container. Fresh or "certified" standard is continually added to the polyethylene bottles during the calibration steps to replenish the quantity used for the sensor rinses.

The standards original container is identified with date received and date opened using a permanent marker. Standards that have exceeded the manufacturer's expiration date are discarded.

3.9.2 QC Calibration Sheets

Calibration sheets are retained as quality control records and are reviewed to address individual multiprobe/sensor issues that may arise, such as electronic "drift".

4.0.0 Data Logging Setup & Data Retrieval

Refer to Section 4.3.3.1 & 4.3.3.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual* for logging and data retrieval.

4.1.0 Logging Setup

Before the DS5 is setup for an unattended logging run, check the logging status in regards to available memory and remove any nonessential files, if needed. In addition, make sure the status of the audio, circulator, and enabled parameters are correct before the logging run is setup. Enable Autolog if desired.

Make sure the DS5 is correctly deployed before the logging run begins.

4.2.0 Retrieval

Once the DS5 has been retrieved from an unattended logging run, check the logging status in regards to the created log file. The log file should be transferred from the DS5 as soon as practicable (refer to Section 4.3.3.2 of the *DS5 User's Manual*). Transfer the log file from the DS5 to a computer in spreadsheet importable form by utilizing the Hydras 3LT software (when specifying a file name for the transfer, save the log file with a .csv extension, this will allow the log file to be directly opened in Microsoft Excel).

5.0.0 Attended Profiling

The DS5 can be utilized for discrete profiling at different stream depths or equipped with a flow cell for continuous profiling (e.x. surface profiling on a boat utilizing a pitot tube) or pumping.

5.1.0 Quality Assurance

- The unit should be recalibrated after each use to assess sensor drift.
- The unit should be cleaned periodically to maintain sensor performance.

6.0.0 Unattended Deployment

The DS5 can be positioned upright (probes pointing down) or horizontally for deployment. Avoid placing the unit in areas of swift currents, areas that might receive deep deposits of sediment during periods of heavy rainfall, or areas where potential vandalism may occur. Attempt to use any available protection that a site may provide (e.x. attach to downstream of bridge piling to protect from floating debris).

6.1.0 Temporary/Portable Installations

PVC piping can be utilized as a protective capsule to house the multiprobe at unsecured locations.

6.1.1 Specifications

- Cut 4" diameter PVC pipe to the desired length (approximately 3') to create protective sleeve.
- Drill approximately 1" diameter holes throughout the sleeve to allow adequate water flow through the capsule.
- Drill approximately 3/4" diameter holes throughout the top of the end caps.
- Glue one end cap to the bottom of the sleeve.
- Place the other end cap on the open end of the sleeve and drill 5/8" hole through the end cap and the sleeve.
- Place a 1/2" bolt through the end cap and the sleeve and secure with two nuts.

6.1.2 Deployment

- Wrap the DS5 with duct insulation (keeping away from the probes).
- Place the DS5 into the PVC capsule (probes pointing down).
- Place the top end cap on the PVC capsule and align the 5/8" holes.
- Suspend the DS5 inside of the PVC capsule with the 1/2" bolt passing through the capsule and the DS5 bail.
- Secure the PVC capsule to an appropriate structure with heavy-duty cables and locks.

6.1.3 Quality Assurance

- The unit should be cleaned and recalibrated at least once a week depending on water quality conditions (i.e. solids loading and biological growth – bio-films).
 - Download the logging file and check the battery status.
 - Clean and recalibrate the sensors.
 - Setup the next logging file.
- Use portable unit to check permanent station readings before and after calibration.
- Use portable unit to check temporary station readings (logged data) between calibration schedules to assess sensor drift.

7.0.0 References

Hydrolab DS5X, DS5, and MS5 Water Quality Multiprobes, User Manual. February 2006 Edition 3. Hach Company.

Surveyor® 4 Water Quality Data Display, User's Manual. Revision D. Hydrolab Corporation. April 1999.

Hydras 3 LT Quick Start, Software Manual. December 2005 Edition 2. Hach Company.

Attachment A: SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 MULTIPROBE INSTRUMENTATION CALIBRATION & QA SHEET

Instrument Model _____ Serial Number _____
Date _____ Analyst(s) _____ Instrument I.D. _____
Site Location _____ Note _____

CALIBRATION READINGS	POST CHECK READINGS
1) <u>Dissolved Oxygen (DO)</u> Elevation (ft) ⇒ Correction Factor _____ Uncorrected BP Conversion (mmHg) _____ Temperature (°C) _____ Probe DO Reading (mg/L) _____ Percent Saturation _____ O ₂ Solubility Calculation (mg/L) _____ Comments: <u>Air Saturated Water</u> _____ _____	1) <u>Dissolved Oxygen (DO)</u> Elevation (ft) ⇒ Correction Factor _____ Uncorrected BP Conversion (mmHg) _____ Temperature (°C) _____ Probe DO Reading (mg/L) _____ Percent Saturation _____ O ₂ Solubility Calculation (mg/L) _____ Comments: _____ _____ _____
2) <u>Conductivity</u> <u>Standard (µS/cm)</u> <u>Reading</u> <u>Adjusted</u> _____ _____ Comments: <u>Specific Conductance</u> _____ _____	2) <u>Conductivity</u> <u>Standard (µS/cm)</u> <u>Reading</u> _____ _____ Comments: <u>Specific Conductance</u> _____ _____
3) <u>pH</u> <u>Buffer</u> <u>Reading</u> <u>Adjusted</u> 4.00 _____ 7.00 _____ 10.00 _____ Comments: _____ _____ _____	3) <u>pH</u> <u>Buffer</u> <u>Reading</u> 4.00 _____ 7.00 _____ 10.00 _____ Comments: _____ _____ _____
4) <u>Turbidity</u> <u>Standard (NTU)</u> <u>Reading</u> <u>Adjusted</u> _____ _____ Comments: _____ _____ _____	4) <u>Turbidity</u> <u>Standard (NTU)</u> <u>Reading</u> _____ _____ Comments: _____ _____ _____

NOTE: Do NOT make adjustments during Post Check. Simply record values observed.

Attachment B: SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 MULTIPROBE INSTRUMENTATION DISSOLVED OXYGEN CALIBRATION TECHNICAL SHEET

Pressure Conversions

1. Inches to Metric Conversion

1in = 25.4mm

Example: $30.15\text{in} * (25.4\text{mm}/1\text{in}) = 765.8\text{mm}$

2. Corrected to Uncorrected Pressure Conversion

Obtain the corrected pressure from the National Weather Service.

Corrected Pressure - $(2.5 * (\text{Elevation}/100)) = \text{Uncorrected Pressure}$

Example: $765.8\text{mm} - (2.5 * (455/100)) = 754.4\text{mm}$

Table 1: Barometric pressure correction factors for selected monitoring sites.

Stream	Site	Gage Datum	Correction
Banklick Creek	KY Route 1829	540.3	13.5
Cruises Creek	KY Route 17	656.9	16.4
Elijahs Creek	Elijahs Creek Road	759.1	19.0
Four Mile Creek	Popular Ridge Road	535.2	13.4
Gunpowder Creek	Camp Ernest Road	683.1	17.1
Mud Lick Creek	KY Route 14	487.7	12.2
Twelve Mile Creek	KY Route 1997	505.9	12.6
Woolper Creek	Woolper Road	490.7	12.3
Note: Gage Datum = feet above mean sea level			
Note: Correction = mm Hg			

Table 2: Barometric pressure correction factors for selected sites.

Stream	Site	Elevation	Correction
Ohio River	Markland Normal Pool	455	11.4
Licking River	12th Street	460	11.5
District Office	Prep Room	505	12.6
Note: Elevation = approximate feet above mean sea level			
Note: Correction = mm Hg			

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 MULTIPROBE INSTRUMENTATION

DISSOLVED OXYGEN CALIBRATION TECHNICAL SHEET

Oxygen Solubility Calculation

To verify the probe DO reading, utilize the following steps.

1. Determine the DO solubility of the standard's temperature at 760mm
Example: Stable Temperature = 20.7°C
From Table 2 -- 20.7°C at 760mm = 8.96mg/L

2. Determine the DO solubility of the standard's temperature at the current pressure
Example: 20.7°C, 754.4mm Hg
 $\text{DOsol}(760\text{mm Hg}) * \text{Current Pressure} / 760\text{mm Hg}$
 $= \text{DOsol}(\text{Current Pressure})$
 $8.96 * (754.4/760) = 8.89\text{mg/L}$

Table 2: Solubility of oxygen in water in equilibrium with air at 760mm Hg pressure and 100% relative humidity (EAWAG 1973). Units = mg/L

(°C)	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9
0	14.60	14.56	14.52	14.48	14.44	14.40	14.36	14.33	14.29	14.25
1	14.21	14.17	14.13	14.09	14.05	14.02	13.98	13.94	13.90	13.87
2	13.83	13.79	13.75	13.72	13.68	13.64	13.61	13.57	13.54	13.50
3	13.46	13.43	13.39	13.36	13.32	13.29	13.25	13.22	13.18	13.15
4	13.11	13.08	13.04	13.01	12.98	12.94	12.91	12.88	12.84	12.81
5	12.78	12.74	12.71	12.68	12.64	12.61	12.58	12.55	12.52	12.48
6	12.45	12.42	12.39	12.36	12.33	12.29	12.26	12.23	12.20	12.17
7	12.14	12.11	12.08	12.05	12.02	11.99	11.96	11.93	11.90	11.87
8	11.84	11.81	11.78	11.76	11.73	11.70	11.67	11.64	11.61	11.58
9	11.56	11.53	11.50	11.47	11.44	11.42	11.39	11.36	11.34	11.31
10	11.28	11.25	11.23	11.20	11.17	11.15	11.12	11.10	11.07	11.04
11	11.02	10.99	10.97	10.94	10.91	10.89	10.86	10.84	10.81	10.79
12	10.76	10.74	10.72	10.69	10.67	10.64	10.62	10.59	10.57	10.55
13	10.52	10.50	10.47	10.45	10.43	10.40	10.38	10.36	10.34	10.31
14	10.29	10.27	10.24	10.22	10.20	10.18	10.15	10.13	10.11	10.09
15	10.07	10.04	10.02	10.00	9.98	9.96	9.94	9.92	9.89	9.87
16	9.85	9.83	9.81	9.79	9.77	9.75	9.73	9.71	9.69	9.67
17	9.65	9.63	9.61	9.59	9.57	9.55	9.53	9.51	9.49	9.47
18	9.45	9.43	9.41	9.39	9.37	9.36	9.34	9.32	9.30	9.28
19	9.26	9.24	9.23	9.21	9.19	9.17	9.15	9.13	9.12	9.10
20	9.08	9.06	9.05	9.03	9.01	8.99	8.98	8.96	8.94	8.92
21	8.91	8.89	8.87	8.86	8.84	8.82	8.81	8.79	8.77	8.76
22	8.74	8.72	8.71	8.69	8.67	8.66	8.64	8.63	8.61	8.59
23	8.58	8.56	8.55	8.53	8.51	8.50	8.48	8.47	8.45	8.44
24	8.42	8.41	8.39	8.38	8.36	8.35	8.33	8.32	8.30	8.29
25	8.27	8.26	8.24	8.23	8.21	8.20	8.18	8.17	8.16	8.14
26	8.13	8.11	8.10	8.08	8.07	8.06	8.04	8.03	8.01	8.00
27	7.99	7.97	7.96	7.94	7.93	7.92	7.90	7.89	7.88	7.86
28	7.85	7.84	7.82	7.81	7.80	7.78	7.77	7.76	7.74	7.73
29	7.72	7.70	7.69	7.68	7.66	7.65	7.64	7.63	7.61	7.60
30	7.59	7.57	7.56	7.55	7.54	7.52	7.51	7.50	7.49	7.47

APPENDIX B

***NORTHERN KY SANITATION DISTRICT No.1
CHAIN OF CUSTODY***

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017
Phone: (859)578-7460 Fax: (859)331-2436

Chain Of Custody Record

Page _____ of _____



Project Name						Watershed				Survey Location									
Contact Person		Sampler(s) Signature				Survey Type (Circle One) Wet or Dry													
Lab ID	Sample ID Code	Date	Time	Composite / Grab	Pole / Bucket / Glove	Sample Location	No. of Containers	Analysis Required										Remarks	
								E. coli	TSS	CBOD5	TP, N-N, TKN, NH3	Orthophosphate							

Relinquished By: Sampler	Date	Time	Accepted By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Remarks
Relinquished By: Lab Runner	Date	Time	Received By: Laboratory	Date	Time	Remarks

APPENDIX C

***NORTHERN KY SANITATION DISTRICT No.1
FIELD DATA SHEET***

SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 FIELD DATA SHEET

PROJECT NAME: _____		DATE: _____		<div>SAMPLE TYPE</div> <div>GRAB COMPOSITE</div> <div>CIRCLE ONE</div>			
SITE / STREAM NAME: _____		START TIME: _____					
SITE LOCATION: _____		END TIME: _____					
LABORATORY: _____		SAMPLERS: _____		<div>SAMPLE MATRIX</div> <div>SEDIMENT WATER</div> <div>CIRCLE ONE</div>			
EQUIPMENT ID: _____		MULTIPROBE SONDE: _____					
STREAM CONDITIONS: _____							
SITE CONDITIONS: _____							
WEATHER CONDITIONS: SUNNY CLOUDY OVERCAST WINDY RAIN SNOW AIR TEMP (F): _____							
(CIRCLE APPROPRIATE CONDITIONS)							
PROJECT DESCRIPTOR: _____							
SITE / SAMPLE ID (BANK & DEPTH)	TEMP. (C)	pH	D.O. (mg/L)	SP. COND. (µS/cm)	TURBIDITY (NTU)	FLOW	SAMPLE TIME
FIELD OBSERVATIONS:						IF FOUND, RETURN TO: SANITATION DISTRICT NO.1 1045 EATON DRIVE FORT WRIGHT, KY 41017 (859) 578-7460	

Standard Operating Procedures
for
Field Procedures for Macroinvertebrate Collections

Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No. 1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

Revision Number: 1
April 2007

Methods for the collection of biological samples follow the protocols of USEPA document 841-B-99-002 (Barbour *et al.* 1999) and modified to reflect KDOW protocol requirements (KDOW 2002). The EPA document is readily available via the EPA website <http://www.epa.gov/owow/monitoring/rbp/download.html>. Specific modifications and reasons for these modifications are described below.

MACROINVERTEBRATE COLLECTION AND TAXONOMIC PROCEDURES FOR WADABLE STREAMS

A. Field Equipment

1. D-frame dip net (500 µm mesh)
2. Kick Seine (500µm mesh)
3. 0.25m frame
4. Sieve pan (500 µm mesh)
5. Sample containers and labels
6. Water bottle
7. Field data sheet, pencil, permanent markers
8. Waders
9. Rubber gloves

B. Laboratory Equipment

1. Forceps
2. Dissecting microscopes
3. Compound microscope
3. Preservatives
4. Sample containers
5. Waterproof label paper and fine point pen
6. Identification references
7. Microscope slides and cover slips
8. Bench sheets

C. Preparation

Benthic invertebrates will be collected after the site habitat assessment has been completed. Physical Characterization/Water Quality field data sheets (Attachment A) will be completed at the time of habitat assessment or prior to benthic invertebrate collection and the percentage of available substrates will be determined.

Sample containers shall be labeled with permanent markers.

D. Field Collection

Primary Method

Riffle samples are collected in areas of the stream with moderate to high currents and cobble or gravel substrates. Four (4) 0.25m² samples are taken from mid-riffle or the thalweg (past of deepest thread of water), dislodging benthos by vigorously disturbing the 0.25m² (20" x 20") in front of the kick seine. Large rocks should be hand washed in to the net. The contents of the net are then washed and all four samples are composited into a 500µm mesh wash bucket. This sample must be kept separate from all other subhabitat collections.

Alternate method

Macroinvertebrate collections will consist of five jabs with a standard D-Net using the Modified Traveling-Kick method (TKM). Samples will be taken in proportion to the habitat types present (i.e., undercut banks, vegetative areas, inorganic substrate, roots/snags, run and/or riffle areas) within the 100-meter stream reach previously defined in the habitat assessment. A jab will consist of an approximate 1.5-meter agitation of substrate resulting in approximately 0.5-m² of sampled habitat area. Each jab collection from a site will be processed as a single sample. Sample collection will begin at the downstream end of the site and with collection proceeding upstream.

Initially, collected samples will be sieved in the field using standard 500-micron sieve to remove small debris and excess sediment. Extremely large debris will be thoroughly washed into the sieve and discarded. Immediately following collection, samples will be placed in pre-labeled containers. Additional labels will be placed inside all biological samples to identify the sample in the event the outer label is accidentally removed or obliterated. Samples will be shipped to Third Rock's laboratory for processing. All samples collected will be accompanied by chain-of-custody documents.

Multi-Habitat Sample

Sweep samples involve sampling a variety of non-riffle habitat with aid of a triangular or d-frame dip net. Each habitat is sampled in at least three (3) replicates, where possible. Examples of areas to sweep include, but are not limited to: undercut banks, root mats, marginal emergent vegetation, bedrock, weed beds, and leaf packs.

Additionally, a rock pick sample will be collected by hand picking macroinvertebrates from 15 rocks throughout the length of the sampling reach. These organisms are added to the multi-habitat collections. All sweeps and rock picks are composited into one sample, but must be kept separate from riffle samples.

Macroinvertebrate sampling equipment will be thoroughly rinsed and picked free of debris and organisms after each sample. Any organisms found shall be placed in sample containers. Biological community sampling and fish shocking will not occur at the same site on the same day in order to avoid sampling disturbed areas.

E. Laboratory Procedures

Sample Receipt and Preservation

Upon receipt by Third Rock's laboratory, chain-of custody documents will be completed and samples will be logged into the laboratory logbook and/or laboratory database. Samples will be preserved with 70% ethyl alcohol for long-term storage.

Taxonomic Procedures

Laboratory taxonomic evaluations for macroinvertebrate samples will be performed according to sorting and identification procedures in EPA document 841-B-99-002 (Barbour *et al.* 1999). Benthic samples will be sorted and separated into major phylogenetic categories. All organisms will be removed with fine-tipped forceps or a pipette and placed in shell vials containing a 70% ethyl alcohol solution. All identifications will be performed by experienced taxonomists and verified in accordance with the Third Rock QA/QC program. All identifications and enumerations will be recorded on standardized sheets for consistency and ease of data entry.

Subsampling techniques may be necessary in case of large sample volume. Dual voucher sets (in-house and client) will be produced. A full comprehensive voucher set will be retained along with identified specimens.

Taxonomic QA/QC

QA/QC checks will occur on no less than 10% of the samples processed. A minimum of 10% of all sorted samples will be checked for completeness. Completeness checks will be accomplished by resorting the residual sample material by a different technician. If the animals removed from the residual material total 5% or more of the total number of animals in the sample, this constitutes a QC failure, and all samples sorted by that technician shall be resorted back until the time of the last acceptable QC check.

For identification tasks, at least 10% of all identified samples will be checked for identification and enumeration accuracy. Taxonomic checks will be performed by the reidentification of the selected samples by a different taxonomist. A discrepancy of 5% or more constitutes a QC failure, and all samples identified by the taxonomist on that project are reworked.

Data entry will be facilitated by the use of standardized sheets to record organism identifications and counts for each sample. A visual check of all data will be performed by an experienced referee or by the Taxonomy Task Manager to assure completeness and accuracy of the data. Third Rock Consultants uses a comprehensive QA/QC program to assure accuracy and completeness of processing, identifications, data analysis, and reporting.

F. Analyses

Taxonomic data will be initially recorded on standardized lab bench sheets. Data will be transferred into a spreadsheet, and ultimately applied to a relational database (MACLIMS) currently under development by Third Rock that will produce index scores developed by the Kentucky Division of Water (KDOW 2002)

MACROINVERTEBRATE COLLECTION AND TAXONOMIC PROCEDURES FOR NON-WADABLE STREAMS

Methods for collecting biological samples from non-wadeable locations are described below and follow the guidelines developed for large rivers developed by the Ohio River Valley Water Sanitation Commission. These methods were developed specifically for the Ohio River and its large tributaries, and therefore are the most appropriate protocols for sampling. Each method will have 3 distinct methodologies, Shallow Hester-Dendy's, Deep Hester-Dendy's and Multi-habitat.

Shallow Hester-Dendy

The following describes the procedures for aquatic macroinvertebrate population surveys using the modified Hester-Dendy multiplate shallow water sampling method.

Sampling Schedule

Ideally, sampling schedules should be established which take advantages of the low flow conditions of the summer and early fall. The samplers are set out in mid July to early September, and are collected six to eight weeks after placement.

Sampling Procedures

Hester-Dendy (H-D) Specifications

The sampler is constructed of 1/8 inch tempered masonite cardboard cut into three inch square plates and one inch square spacers. A 3/8 inch hole is drilled in the center of each plate and spacer. Eight plates and twelve spacers are placed on a 1/4 inch X 4 inch eye bolt so that there are three single spaces (1/8"), three double spaces (1/4"), and one triple space (3/8") between the plates. The plates and spacers are secured to the eye bolt with two 1/4 inch washers and one standard 1/4 inch nut. For a more specific description of the H-D sampler, see Hester and Dendy (1968).

Assembly of sampling unit

A sampling unit is a series of five H-D samplers bound together with twine or cords and secured to a cement block. The five samplers are tied together, eyebolt to eyebolt in a circular pattern. The group is then lashed securely to the top of the block with cord of at least 1/8" diameter. A two-foot piece of reinforcing rod is secured vertically to the block to be partially driven into the substrate for additional stability.

Placement

The sampling unit should be placed in an area which is safe from disturbance and has a substrate which is representative of the sampling zone. In the event that the zone is simply not suitable for unit placement, the collector may then choose to set it in an area that the collector feels would best represent the zone. Once a location is chosen, the sampling unit is lowered into the water and the rod driven into the substrate. The sampling unit must be placed in two to three feet of water to ensure good light penetration for the duration of the exposure period. This will ensure that there is sufficient light to support life. The sampling unit should not be exposed to air, as this will cause the sample to dry out. Therefore, natural fluctuations in the river level must be taken into consideration. The National Weather Service and U.S. Corps. Of Engineers river data systems should be consulted prior to sampling.

Colonization period

The sampling unit must remain undisturbed for a period of at least six weeks, but should not exceed eight weeks.

Sampling Unit Retrieval

During retrieval, the sampling unit is approached from the downstream side to ensure minimal disturbance. This eliminates covering the sampler in a mud cloud. A five-gallon bucket is submerged and positioned next to the block. The five H-D samplers are then carefully cut from the block and slid into the bucket. The bucket is then taken to the boat and the plates disassembled.

Plate Disassembly and Preservation

The five H-D samplers are disassembled in the bucket with special care taken not to spill or lose any of the sample material. The plates are brushed or scraped using another plate while submerged and all sampler parts rinsed with distilled water and discarded. The bolts may be kept for reuse. After all parts have been rinsed and removed from the bucket, the water is then poured through a standard #30 sieve, the bucket is rinsed through the sieve until clean and all residue placed in a sample container. The sieve is rinsed repeatedly into a white sorting pan or bucket to ensure that all organisms have been removed from the sieve. Once all organisms and residue are in the sample container, 10% formalin is added to cover the sample with at least one inch of preservative.

Sample Packaging and Labeling

Each sample is properly preserved in a plastic sample container, the lid is then sealed shut with electrical tape and labeled. Each container is labeled with collection site, date of collection, sample number and GPS coordinates. An

additional tag made of waterproof paper and permanent ink is placed in the jar. All samples are recorded on a standard chain of custody form (Attachment A).

Sample Storage

Samples are held at the District office until they can be shipped to the contractor.

Documentation

Habitat and environmental conditions, such as water quality parameters at each sampling location are noted and recorded in a log. A standard macroinvertebrate-sampling sheet is used to record the locations of sampler placement and retrieval.

Materials List

Needed for each location:

PLACEMENT:

1. Hip waders
2. Assembled H-D samplers
3. Cement block
4. 2 ft. piece of rebar
5. Twine or small rope
6. Hammer

RETRIEVAL:

1. Waders
2. Knife
3. 5 gal. bucket
4. Crescent wrench
5. Common screwdriver
6. Squirt bottle
7. Distilled water
8. Sorting pan or bucket
9. #30 sieve
10. Plastic sample jar and lid
11. Electrical tape
12. Permanent marker
13. Waterproof paper and ink for labels in sample jar
14. Any instruments needed for measuring WQ parameters

Deep Hester-Dendy's

This document describes the procedures aquatic macroinvertebrate population surveys using the modified Hester-Dendy multiplate sampling method in deep water.

Sampling Schedule

Ideally, sampling schedules should be established which take advantages of the low flow conditions of the summer and early fall. The samplers are set out in mid July to early September (ideally, for the sake of consistency, the last week of August or first week of September), and are collected six to eight weeks after placement.

Sampling Procedures

Hester-Dendy (H-D) Specifications

The sampler is constructed of 1/8 inch tempered masonite cardboard cut into three inch square plates and one inch square spacers. A 3/8 inch hole is drilled in the center of each plate and spacer. Eight plates and twelve spacers are placed on a 1/4 inch X 4 inch eye bolt so that there are three single spaces (1/8"), three double spaces (1/4"), and one triple space (3/8") between the plates. The plates and spacers are secured to the eye bolt with two 1/4 inch washers and one standard 1/4 inch nut. For a more specific description of the H-D sampler, see Hester and Dendy (1968).

Assembly of sampling unit

A sampling unit is a series of five H-D samplers bound together with twine or cords and secured to a cement paver stone. The five samplers are tied together, eyebolt to eyebolt in a circular pattern. The group is then clipped securely to a line of desired length. The line is then ran through an eyebolt which has been placed in the center of the paver stone (a masonry bit should be used to drill a in the center of each stone, with an eyebolt properly secured in each hole).

Placement

The sampling unit should be placed in an area which is safe from disturbance and is within 10 meters of the shallow sampling unit placement. In the event that the zone is simply not suitable for unit placement, the collector may then choose to set it in an area that the collector feels would best represent the zone. Once a location is chosen, a boat driver backs out slowly from shore, until a deep of 10 feet is achieved. The sampling unit is lowered into the water by the line and allowed to settle on the bottom. The boat then returns to shore, letting line out so that it may be tied off securely. The line may be tied to anything deep secure by the collector, but efforts need to be made to disguise the line to prevent

vandalism. A float may be attached to the sampling unit to aid in retrieval, but the collector needs to be sure that the float does not prevent the sampling unit from reaching the bottom.

Colonization period

The sampling unit must remain undisturbed for a period of at least six weeks, but should not exceed eight weeks.

Sampling Unit Retrieval

During retrieval, the sampling unit is approached from the downstream side to ensure minimal disturbance. Upon location of the retrieval line, the collector will cut the line, being sure to keep the line taught to minimize disturbance. The collector then, while on the boat, backs out slowly until the boat is directly over the sampling unit, at which time the unit is slowly pulled to the surface. A five-gallon bucket is submerged and positioned next to the unit. The five H-D samplers are then carefully cut from the block and slid into the bucket. The bucket is then taken to the boat and the plates disassembled.

Plate Disassembly and Preservation

The five H-D samplers are disassembled in the bucket with special care taken not to spill or lose any of the sample material. The plates are brushed or scraped using another plate while submerged and all sampler parts rinsed with distilled water and discarded. The bolts may be kept for reuse. After all parts have been rinsed and removed from the bucket, the water is then poured through a standard #30 sieve, the bucket is rinsed through the sieve until clean and all residue placed in a sample container. The sieve is rinsed repeatedly into a white sorting pan or bucket to ensure that all organisms have been removed from the sieve. Once all organisms and residue are in the sample container, 70% ethanol or 10% formalin (as directed by processing lab) is added to cover the sample with at least one inch of preservative.

Sample Packaging and Labeling

Each sample is properly preserved in a plastic sample container, the lid is then sealed shut with electrical tape and labeled. Each container is labeled with collection site, date of collection, sample number and GPS coordinates. An additional tag made of waterproof paper and permanent ink is placed in the jar. All samples are recorded on a standard chain of custody form (Attachment A).

Sample Storage

Samples are held at the District office until they can be shipped to the contractor.

Documentation

Habitat and environmental conditions, such as water quality parameters at each sampling location are noted and recorded in a log. A standard macroinvertebrate-sampling sheet is used to record the locations of sampler placement and retrieval.

Materials List

Needed for each location:

PLACEMENT:

1. Waders
2. Assembled H-D samplers
3. Paver stone
4. 2 ft. piece of rebar
5. Rope
6. Hammer

RETRIEVAL:

1. Waders
2. Knife
3. 5 gal. bucket
4. Crescent wrench
5. Common screwdriver
6. Squirt bottle
7. Distilled water
8. Sorting pan or bucket
9. #30 sieve
10. Plastic sample jar and lid
11. Electrical tape
12. Permanent marker
13. Waterproof paper and ink for labels in sample jar
14. Any instruments needed for measuring WQ parameters

Multi-habitat

This document describes the procedures for aquatic macroinvertebrate population surveys using the qualitative multiple habitat sampling method.

Sampling Schedule

The qualitative sampling methods are to be performed upon **retrieval** of the Hester-Dendy sampling units.

Sampling Procedures

Net Specifications

Samples are collected with standard D-frame dip nets made of 500µm mesh.

Collecting technique

Multihabitat samples are collected at 6 transects, every 100m, throughout each zone, similar to the habitat collection technique. At each transect, 10 of any combination of jabs, sweeps, kicks, etc are taken within 10m of the transect point. Efforts should be made to sample all available habitats within this 10m radius. The net is rinsed of debris and organisms into a bucket at each transect, with all transects being combined to make one composite sample.

Sample Preparation and Preservation

After all 6 transects have been collected, the remaining slurry is then poured through a standard #30 sieve, the bucket is rinsed through the sieve until clean and all residue placed in a sample container. The sieve is rinsed repeatedly into a white sorting pan or bucket to ensure that all organisms have been removed from the sieve. Once all organisms and residue are in the sample container, 70% ethanol or 10% formalin (as required by contractor) is added to cover the sample with at least one inch of preservative.

Sample Packaging and Labeling

Each sample is properly preserved in a plastic sample container, the lid is then sealed shut with electrical tape and labeled. Each container is labeled with collection site, date of collection, sample number and GPS coordinates. An additional tag made of waterproof paper and permanent ink is placed in the jar. All samples are recorded on a standard chain of custody form (Attachment A).

Sample Storage

Samples are held at the District office until they can be shipped to the contractor.

Documentation

Habitat and environmental conditions, such as water quality parameters at each sampling location are noted and recorded in a log. A standard macroinvertebrate-sampling sheet is used to record the locations of sampler placement and retrieval.

Materials List

1. Waders
2. D-frame net
3. Bucket
4. Squirt bottle
5. Distilled water
6. Sorting pan or bucket
7. #30 sieve
8. Plastic sample jar and lid
9. Electrical tape
10. Permanent marker
11. Waterproof paper and ink for labels in sample jar
12. Any instruments needed for measuring WQ parameters

Attachment A

Chain of Custody and Physical Characterization/Water Quality Field Sheets

**PHYSICAL CHARACTERIZATION/WATER QUALITY FIELD DATA SHEET
(FRONT)**

STREAM NAME	LOCATION	
STATION # _____ RIVERMILE _____	STREAM CLASS	
LAT _____ LONG _____	RIVER BASIN	
STORET #	AGENCY	
INVESTIGATORS		
FORM COMPLETED BY	DATE _____ TIME _____ AM PM	REASON FOR SURVEY

WEATHER CONDITIONS	<p>Now</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> storm (heavy rain)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> rain (steady rain)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> showers (intermittent)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> %cloud cover</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> clear/sunny</p>	<p>Past 24 hours</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> storm (heavy rain)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> rain (steady rain)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> showers (intermittent)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> %cloud cover</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> clear/sunny</p>	<p>Has there been a heavy rain in the last 7 days?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No</p> <p>Air Temperature _____ °C</p> <p>Other _____</p>
	<p>SITE LOCATION/MAP</p> <p>Draw a map of the site and indicate the areas sampled (or attach a photograph)</p>		
STREAM CHARACTERIZATION	<p>Stream Subsystem</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Perennial <input type="checkbox"/> Intermittent <input type="checkbox"/> Tidal</p> <p>Stream Origin</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Glacial <input type="checkbox"/> Spring-fed</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Non-glacial montane <input type="checkbox"/> Mixture of origins</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Swamp and bog <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____</p> <p>Stream Type</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Coldwater <input type="checkbox"/> Warmwater</p> <p>Catchment Area _____ km²</p>		

**PHYSICAL CHARACTERIZATION/WATER QUALITY FIELD DATA SHEET
(BACK)**

WATERSHED FEATURES	Predominant Surrounding Landuse <input type="checkbox"/> Forest <input type="checkbox"/> Commercial <input type="checkbox"/> Field/Pasture <input type="checkbox"/> Industrial <input type="checkbox"/> Agricultural <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Residential		Local Watershed NPS Pollution <input type="checkbox"/> No evidence <input type="checkbox"/> Some potential sources <input type="checkbox"/> Obvious sources Local Watershed Erosion <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Moderate <input type="checkbox"/> Heavy
RIPARIAN VEGETATION (18 meter buffer)	Indicate the dominant type and record the dominant species present <input type="checkbox"/> Trees <input type="checkbox"/> Shrubs <input type="checkbox"/> Grasses <input type="checkbox"/> Herbaceous dominant species present _____		
INSTREAM FEATURES	Estimated Reach Length _____ m Estimated Stream Width _____ m Sampling Reach Area _____ m ² Area in km ² (m ² x1000) _____ km ² Estimated Stream Depth _____ m Surface Velocity (at thalweg) _____ m/sec Canopy Cover <input type="checkbox"/> Partly open <input type="checkbox"/> Partly shaded <input type="checkbox"/> Shaded High Water Mark _____ m Proportion of Reach Represented by Stream Morphology Types <input type="checkbox"/> Riffle _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Run _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Pool _____% Channelized <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No Dam Present <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		
LARGE WOODY DEBRIS	LWD _____ m ² Density of LWD _____ m ² /km ² (LWD/ reach area)		
AQUATIC VEGETATION	Indicate the dominant type and record the dominant species present <input type="checkbox"/> Rooted emergent <input type="checkbox"/> Rooted submergent <input type="checkbox"/> Rooted floating <input type="checkbox"/> Free floating <input type="checkbox"/> Floating Algae <input type="checkbox"/> Attached Algae dominant species present _____ Portion of the reach with aquatic vegetation _____ %		
WATER QUALITY	Temperature _____ °C Specific Conductance _____ Dissolved Oxygen _____ pH _____ Turbidity _____ WQ Instrument Used _____ Water Odors <input type="checkbox"/> Normal/None <input type="checkbox"/> Sewage <input type="checkbox"/> Petroleum <input type="checkbox"/> Chemical <input type="checkbox"/> Fishy <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ Water Surface Oils <input type="checkbox"/> Slick <input type="checkbox"/> Sheen <input type="checkbox"/> Globs <input type="checkbox"/> Flecks <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ Turbidity (if not measured) <input type="checkbox"/> Clear <input type="checkbox"/> Slightly turbid <input type="checkbox"/> Turbid <input type="checkbox"/> Opaque <input type="checkbox"/> Stained <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____		
SEDIMENT/ SUBSTRATE	Odors <input type="checkbox"/> Normal <input type="checkbox"/> Sewage <input type="checkbox"/> Petroleum <input type="checkbox"/> Chemical <input type="checkbox"/> Anaerobic <input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ Deposits <input type="checkbox"/> Sludge <input type="checkbox"/> Sawdust <input type="checkbox"/> Paper fiber <input type="checkbox"/> Sand <input type="checkbox"/> Relict shells <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ Oils <input type="checkbox"/> Absent <input type="checkbox"/> Slight <input type="checkbox"/> Moderate <input type="checkbox"/> Profuse Looking at stones which are not deeply embedded, are the undersides black in color? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		

INORGANIC SUBSTRATE COMPONENTS (should add up to 100%)			ORGANIC SUBSTRATE COMPONENTS (does not necessarily add up to 100%)		
Substrate Type	Diameter	% Composition in Sampling Reach	Substrate Type	Characteristic	% Composition in Sampling Area
Bedrock			Detritus	sticks, wood, coarse plant materials (CPOM)	
Boulder	> 256 mm (10")				
Cobble	64-256 mm (2.5"-10")		Muck-Mud	black, very fine organic (FPOM)	
Gravel	2-64 mm (0.1"-2.5")				
Sand	0.06-2mm (gritty)		Marl	grey, shell fragments	
Silt	0.004-0.06 mm				
Clay	< 0.004 mm (slick)				

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (FRONT)

STREAM NAME _____		LOCATION _____	
STATION # _____ RIVERMILE _____		STREAM CLASS _____	
LAT _____ LONG _____		RIVER BASIN _____	
STORET # _____		AGENCY _____	
INVESTIGATORS _____			
FORM COMPLETED BY _____		DATE _____ TIME _____ AM PM	REASON FOR SURVEY _____

Parameters to be evaluated in sampling reach	Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
		Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
	1. Epifaunal Substrate/ Available Cover	Greater than 70% of substrate favorable for epifaunal colonization and fish cover; mix of snags, submerged logs, undercut banks, cobble or other stable habitat and at stage to allow full colonization potential (i.e., logs/snags that are <u>not</u> new fall and <u>not</u> transient).	40-70% mix of stable habitat; well-suited for full colonization potential; adequate habitat for maintenance of populations; presence of additional substrate in the form of newfall, but not yet prepared for colonization (may rate at high end of scale).	20-40% mix of stable habitat; habitat availability less than desirable; substrate frequently disturbed or removed.	Less than 20% stable habitat; lack of habitat is obvious; substrate unstable or lacking.
	SCORE	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
	2. Embeddedness	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 0-25% surrounded by fine sediment. Layering of cobble provides diversity of niche space.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 25-50% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 50-75% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are more than 75% surrounded by fine sediment.
	SCORE	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
	3. Velocity/Depth Regime	All four velocity/depth regimes present (slow-deep, slow-shallow, fast-deep, fast-shallow). (Slow is < 0.3 m/s, deep is > 0.5 m.)	Only 3 of the 4 regimes present (if fast-shallow is missing, score lower than if missing other regimes).	Only 2 of the 4 habitat regimes present (if fast-shallow or slow-shallow are missing, score low).	Dominated by 1 velocity/depth regime (usually slow-deep).
	SCORE	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
	4. Sediment Deposition	Little or no enlargement of islands or point bars and less than 5% of the bottom affected by sediment deposition.	Some new increase in bar formation, mostly from gravel, sand or fine sediment; 5-30% of the bottom affected; slight deposition in pools.	Moderate deposition of new gravel, sand or fine sediment on old and new bars; 30-50% of the bottom affected; sediment deposits at obstructions, constrictions, and bends; moderate deposition of pools prevalent.	Heavy deposits of fine material, increased bar development; more than 50% of the bottom changing frequently; pools almost absent due to substantial sediment deposition.
	SCORE	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
	5. Channel Flow Status	Water reaches base of both lower banks, and minimal amount of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills >75% of the available channel; or <25% of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills 25-75% of the available channel, and/or riffle substrates are mostly exposed.	Very little water in channel and mostly present as standing pools.
	SCORE	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (BACK)

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category																				
	Optimal					Suboptimal					Marginal					Poor					
6. Channel Alteration	Channelization or dredging absent or minimal; stream with normal pattern.					Some channelization present, usually in areas of bridge abutments; evidence of past channelization, i.e., dredging, (greater than past 20 yr) may be present, but recent channelization is not present.					Channelization may be extensive; embankments or shoring structures present on both banks; and 40 to 80% of stream reach channelized and disrupted.					Banks shored with gabion or cement; over 80% of the stream reach channelized and disrupted. Instream habitat greatly altered or removed entirely.					
SCORE	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
7. Frequency of Riffles (or bends)	Occurrence of riffles relatively frequent; ratio of distance between riffles divided by width of the stream <7:1 (generally 5 to 7); variety of habitat is key. In streams where riffles are continuous, placement of boulders or other large, natural obstruction is important.					Occurrence of riffles infrequent; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 7 to 15.					Occasional riffle or bend; bottom contours provide some habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 15 to 25.					Generally all flat water or shallow riffles; poor habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is a ratio of >25.					
SCORE	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
8. Bank Stability (score each bank) Note: determine left or right side by facing downstream.	Banks stable; evidence of erosion or bank failure absent or minimal; little potential for future problems. <5% of bank affected.					Moderately stable; infrequent, small areas of erosion mostly healed over. 5-30% of bank in reach has areas of erosion.					Moderately unstable; 30-60% of bank in reach has areas of erosion; high erosion potential during floods.					Unstable; many eroded areas; "raw" areas frequent along straight sections and bends; obvious bank sloughing; 60-100% of bank has erosional scars.					
SCORE __ (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE __ (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
9. Vegetative Protection (score each bank)	More than 90% of the streambank surfaces and immediate riparian zone covered by native vegetation, including trees, understory shrubs, or nonwoody macrophytes; vegetative disruption through grazing or mowing minimal or not evident; almost all plants allowed to grow naturally.					70-90% of the streambank surfaces covered by native vegetation, but one class of plants is not well-represented; disruption evident but not affecting full plant growth potential to any great extent; more than one-half of the potential plant stubble height remaining.					50-70% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption obvious; patches of bare soil or closely cropped vegetation common; less than one-half of the potential plant stubble height remaining.					Less than 50% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption of streambank vegetation is very high; vegetation has been removed to 5 centimeters or less in average stubble height.					
SCORE __ (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE __ (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
10. Riparian Vegetative Zone Width (score each bank riparian zone)	Width of riparian zone >18 meters; human activities (i.e., parking lots, roadbeds, clear-cuts, lawns, or crops) have not impacted zone.					Width of riparian zone 12-18 meters; human activities have impacted zone only minimally.					Width of riparian zone 6-12 meters; human activities have impacted zone a great deal.					Width of riparian zone <6 meters; little or no riparian vegetation due to human activities.					
SCORE __ (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE __ (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					

Total Score _____

BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE FIELD DATA SHEET

STREAM NAME _____	LOCATION _____	
STATION # _____ RIVERMILE _____	STREAM CLASS _____	
LAT _____ LONG _____	RIVER BASIN _____	
STORET # _____	AGENCY _____	
INVESTIGATORS _____	LOT NUMBER _____	
FORM COMPLETED BY _____	DATE _____ TIME _____ AM PM	REASON FOR SURVEY _____

HABITAT TYPES	Indicate the percentage of each habitat type present <input type="checkbox"/> Cobble _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Snags _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Vegetated Banks _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Sand _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Submerged Macrophytes _____% <input type="checkbox"/> Other (_____) _____%
SAMPLE COLLECTION	Gear used <input type="checkbox"/> D-frame <input type="checkbox"/> kick-net <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ How were the samples collected? <input type="checkbox"/> wading <input type="checkbox"/> from bank <input type="checkbox"/> from boat Indicate the number of jabs/kicks taken in each habitat type. <input type="checkbox"/> Cobble _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Snags _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Vegetated Banks _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Sand _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Submerged Macrophytes _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other (_____) _____
GENERAL COMMENTS	

QUALITATIVE LISTING OF AQUATIC BIOTA

Indicate estimated abundance: 0 = Absent/Not Observed, 1 = Rare, 2 = Common, 3= Abundant, 4 = Dominant

Periphyton	0	1	2	3	4	Slimes	0	1	2	3	4
Filamentous Algae	0	1	2	3	4	Macroinvertebrates	0	1	2	3	4
Macrophytes	0	1	2	3	4	Fish	0	1	2	3	4

FIELD OBSERVATIONS OF MACROBENTHOS

Indicate estimated abundance: 0 = Absent/Not Observed, 1 = Rare (1-3 organisms), 2 = Common (3-9 organisms), 3= Abundant (>10 organisms), 4 = Dominant (>50 organisms)

Porifera	0	1	2	3	4	Anisoptera	0	1	2	3	4	Chironomidae	0	1	2	3	4
Hydrozoa	0	1	2	3	4	Zygoptera	0	1	2	3	4	Ephemeroptera	0	1	2	3	4
Platyhelminthes	0	1	2	3	4	Hemiptera	0	1	2	3	4	Trichoptera	0	1	2	3	4
Turbellaria	0	1	2	3	4	Coleoptera	0	1	2	3	4	Other	0	1	2	3	4
Hirudinea	0	1	2	3	4	Lepidoptera	0	1	2	3	4						
Oligochaeta	0	1	2	3	4	Sialidae	0	1	2	3	4						
Isopoda	0	1	2	3	4	Corydalidae	0	1	2	3	4						
Amphipoda	0	1	2	3	4	Tipulidae	0	1	2	3	4						
Decapoda	0	1	2	3	4	Empididae	0	1	2	3	4						
Gastropoda	0	1	2	3	4	Simuliidae	0	1	2	3	4						
Bivalvia	0	1	2	3	4	Tabinidae	0	1	2	3	4						
						Culcidae	0	1	2	3	4						

Standard Operating Procedures
for
Hydromodification Field Surveys



Northern Kentucky Sanitation District No. 1
1045 Eaton Drive
Fort Wright, KY 41017

Revision Number: 1
August 2009

HYDROMODIFICATION FIELD SURVEYS

A. Field Equipment (quantity)

1. Level and Tripod (1)
2. 16' survey rod, graduated in tenths/hundredths (2)
3. 100m fiberglass tape measure (1)
4. 50m fiberglass tape measure (1)
5. Gravelometer (2)
6. Chest/hip waders
7. Waterproof field notebook (2)
8. 3/8" x 24" rebar (several)
9. 2 lb sledge hammer (1)
10. Machete (1)
11. Flagging tape
12. Spray paint
13. Quarter meter square
14. Camera
15. Metal detector (1)

B. Preparation

All equipment should be inspected to ensure that it is in proper working condition and replaced/refurbished accordingly. Level should be periodically checked by establishing two permanent benchmarks 10-20 meters apart. If elevation is greater than 0.02" different from previous measurements, then equipment will be sent in for service. All personnel participating in the survey should be familiar with the survey equipment and its proper use.

C. Field Surveys

Step 1. Cross-section placement and set-up

The portion of stream identified in prior SD1 site assessments (i.e. biological and/or water quality sample sites) will be the focus of the survey area. New survey sites may be added at the discretion of the project manager.

Upon survey site selection, a cross-section of the stream is put into place at a riffle area, oriented perpendicularly to the flow direction, guided primarily by the methods described by Harrelson *et al.* (1994). To establish this cross-section, rebar pins are driven into the ground above the "bank-full" line on each side of the stream (**Figure 1**). These pins act as "benchmarks" for the survey. Care is taken with the placement of each pin in order to maximize "line of sight", minimize the chance for vandalism and/or pin movement, and to facilitate finding the pins during re-visits. Additionally, if the stream area is located near lawns, or other areas that are maintained, pins are to be driven down to the point that lawn maintenance equipment is not damaged. To further facilitate pin location during re-visits, each pin is triangulated to permanent landmarks nearby (i.e. large trees, boulders,

utility poles, pavement edges, etc.) (**Figure 2**). After triangulation, a metal detector may be used to locate the precise location of the pin.

Once pin placement is established, a vinyl tape measure is stretched across the riffle area, such that the tape runs parallel with the riffle. The “0” end of the tape is placed at the pin on the left bank (looking downstream) and is labeled “R1”. The cross-section ends at the pin on the right descending bank (looking downstream) and is labeled “R2” (**Figure 1**).

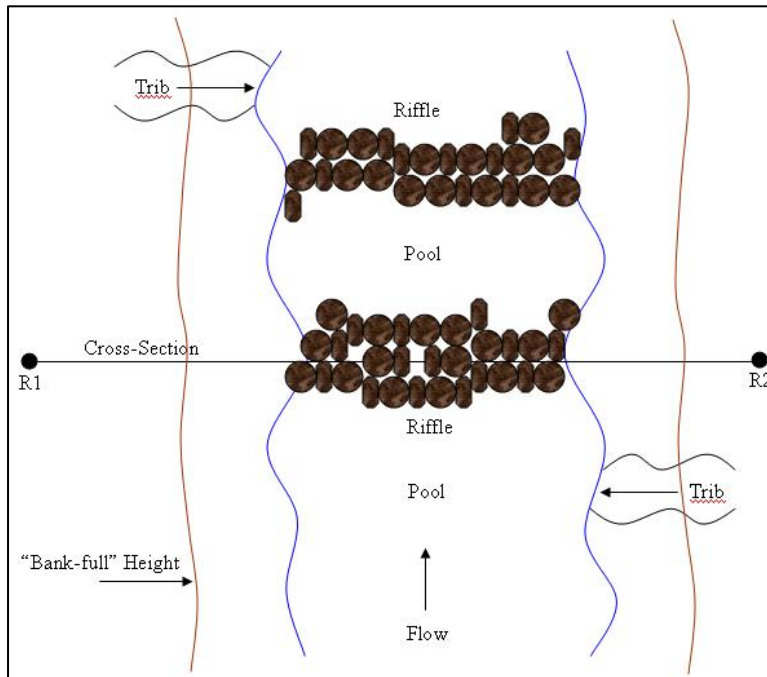


Figure 1. The cross-section is established in parallel with the riffle.

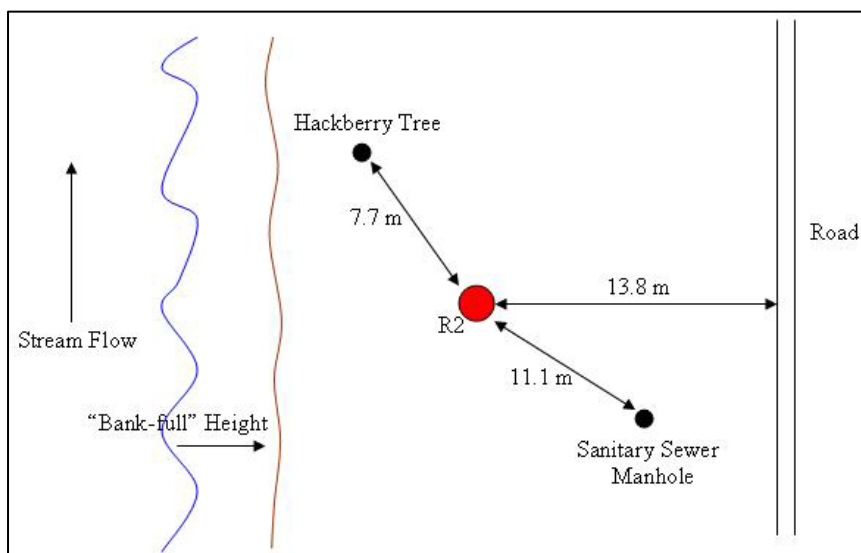


Figure 2. Triangulation of a survey pin (R2).

Step 2. Level and tripod set-up

Level and tripod set-up is conducted in such a manner as to minimize the number of times the set-up is moved. To set up the station, open the tripod and extend the legs so the top platform is flat. Next, attach the level to the tripod using the set screw. Using the adjustable legs on the tripod and the bubble on the level, roughly level the instrument (**Figure 3**). Line up the lens of the level perpendicular to one of the tripod legs and center the bubble on the level using the fine adjustment screws on the base of the instrument. Rotate the instrument 90° and repeat the process on the two remaining legs. The instrument is level when it can be spun 360° and the bubble remains centered (**Figure 4**).



Figure 3. Adjust the legs and fine adjustment knobs to make the instrument level.



Figure 4. The instrument is level when the bubble remains centered at any orientation along the 360° circumference.

Step 3. Shooting the cross-section/reading the survey rod

Once the set-up is level, field personnel will hold the survey rod on top of the R1 pin to take the first shot (“backsight”). Efforts should be made by personnel holding the survey rod to remain as vertically level as possible, using a rod level if necessary. Always orient the rod toward the instrument for ease in reading the rod. Additionally, the survey rod should be gently rocked back and forth toward the instrument level, allowing for more accurate measurements. The rod is read by looking through the level to the rod where the cross-hairs on the lens of the instrument intersect the rod at the lowest point during the rocking motion (**Figure 5, Figure 6**). The second shot (“foresight”) is on the ground beside R1, or “ground at R1”. This is station “0” on the measuring tape.

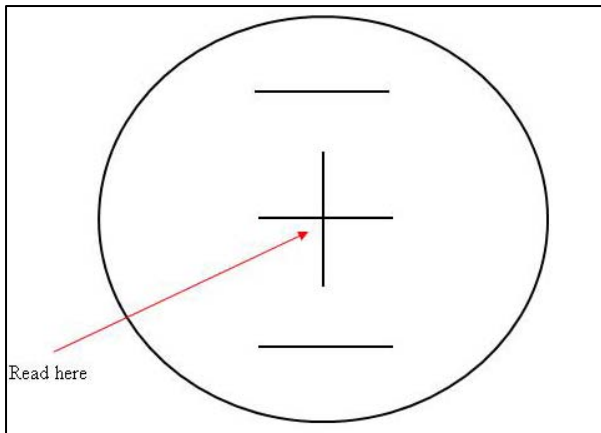


Figure 5. To read the rod correctly, intersect the middle set of cross-hairs in the lens with the line on the rod.



Figure 6. To get a measurement, first determine the ones place on the rod by locating the red number. The tenths place is the larger number on the right of the rod. The hundredths place is either on the top or bottom of each line.

Foresight shots proceed across the stream, noting the station measurement on the tape, and any significant changes in topography that are encountered (i.e. “top of bank”, “toe

of bank”, etc). Shots should be taken at all major grade breaks (i.e. changes in slope) with particularly close spacing at each bank and at major changes in stream bed topography. The final shot on the cross-section is on top of the R2 pin. All shot stations, rod measurements, and notes are recorded in the field notebook (**Figure 7**).

BLC 17.1	Downstream from Picnic Area 11/5		
	Profile		
BS (ft)	STA (m)	FS (ft)	Notes
	0	11.42	Toe of Riffle
	1.2	11.33	
	3.1	11.20	Head of Riffle
	3.8	11.27	Toe of Pool
	5.2	11.66	
	6.9	11.69	
	8.8	11.47	Head of Pool
	10.1	11.43	Toe of Riffle
	12.0	11.31	
	14.6	11.09	
	16.2	11.20	Head of Riffle
	17.2	11.33	Toe of Pool

Figure 7. The field notebook includes the station measurement, the level reading (backsight or foresight) at that point, and any notes about the topography of the station.

Ideally, the entire cross-section is shot from a single set-up. In the event that a second set-up is needed (i.e. obstructed view, severe elevation change, etc.), the following steps are required for moving the level.

1. Shoot to a visible, stable location on the cross-section (e.g. top of a large bedrock slab as opposed to sand that may sink).
2. This location is recorded as ‘temporary benchmark’.
3. Rod holder remains at that precise location with extreme care not to move the rod from the exact spot that it was held for the first shot.
4. Move instrument to desired location, level as described above, and shoot to same temporary benchmark. The first shot from the new station is recorded as “backsight” in the field notebook and is also noted as a “turning point” in the field notebook.
5. Continue with the remainder of the cross-section, recording the shots as “foresights”.
6. Repeat process every time a set-up move is required.

Note: Although care and precision should be taken on all shots, extreme care should be taken during back/foresighting of all benchmarks and at all “turning points.”

Step 4. Shooting a stream profile

The stream profile is a longitudinal section of a given stream area. The profile can vary in length, but includes the cross-section riffle and ideally, one additional riffle-pool sequence both up and downstream (e.g. riffle-pool, riffle-pool, riffle-pool) (**Figure 8**). (typically 100m – 200m). To establish the profile, again as discussed by Harrelson et al (1994), the 100m tape measure is strung from downstream to upstream (downstream end would be “0”) until the desired length or channel morphology has been achieved, making sure that the tape is strung along the thalweg of the stream. The thalweg is defined as the deepest point in the stream at any cross section, and typically meanders from one side of the channel to the other as one moves up or downstream. The first shot is taken at station “0”, with following shots taken moving upstream in varying increments, based on stream heterogeneity. These major changes in channel morphology should be noted in the field notebook (i.e. “toe of riffle”, “head of riffle”, “nick point”, etc.). Again, efforts should be made to shoot the stream profile from one level set-up, but should an additional set-up be necessary, follow the procedure outlined above.

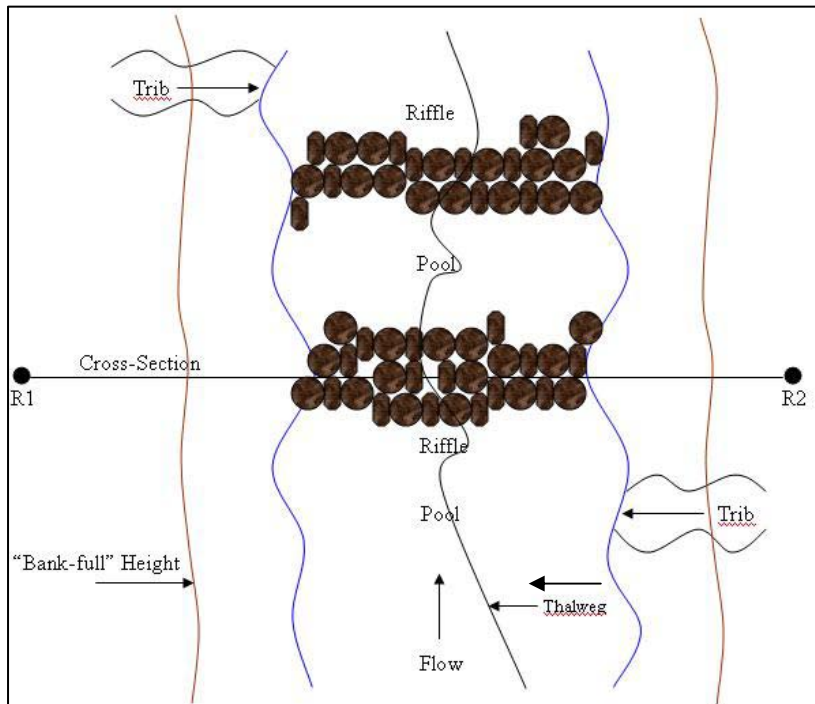


Figure 8. The stream profile includes two riffles and two pools with the measuring tape following the thalweg of the stream.

Step 5. Pebble count

In order to establish stream substrate classification, pebble counts based on methods described by Bunte and Abt (2001a, 2001b) are conducted along the established cross-section. To begin the pebble count, place the square in the stream at the edge of the water along the tape measure of the cross-section. Each corner of the square will be touching a rock. The four rocks at each corner are then passed through smallest hole possible of the

gravelometer and each number is recorded in the field notebook, along with the station on the cross-section (**Figure 9**). The square is then moved to another station on the cross-section and the process is repeated. Sampling stations should be spaced evenly (e.g. every 0.5 or 1.0 m) to avoid bias from sampling one section of the stream more than others. This process is repeated a minimum of 25 times for a minimum total of 100 rocks measured. If the 100th particle is in the middle of the cross section, the sampling should continue at evenly spaced samples across the entire transect to avoid the potential bias discussed above. To avoid “re-measuring” any rocks, measured rocks are not returned to the cross-sectional area. In the event that a rock is too large to pick up, the scale on the side of the gravelometer is used to measure across the intermediate (i.e. not the narrowest nor the widest) axis of the rock.

BLC 17.8		Pebble Count		CJR	11/4
STA	#1	#2	#3	#4	
1 13	22.6	128	45	16	
2 13.5	32	45	90	90	
3 14	64	128	90	90	
4 14.5	64	64	90	128	
5 15	45	90	64	90	
6 15.5	45	45	32	16	
7 16	22.6	22.6	45	16	
8 16.5	32	8	11	11	
9 16.5	45	16	45	22.6	
10 16	22.6	90	45	45	
11 15.5	90	90	32	90	
12 15	90	128	45	180	
13 14.5	45	45	64	64	
14 14	128	90	64	32	

Figure 9. A field notebook is also kept for the pebble count. The station and size of each rock is recorded.

Step 6. Photographs

At least three photos should be taken at each site. All photos should include the rod (and/or person) for scale. One “overview” photo should be taken looking upstream at the cross section and attempt to capture the entire width of the channel. Additionally, each bank should be photographed at the precise location of the cross section for visual documentation of bank stability (or instability) captured by the survey.

Instrument (Level) QA/QC

During all instrument setups, the person responsible for running the instrument should regularly check to verify that the instrument is level. If at any point the instrument is bumped, or for some reason falls out of level, the instrument should be re-leveled and the original backsight of the setup should be re-shot. Record the re-shot of the backsight in the field book and check to see if it varied from the original backsight. If the variability between the two backsights is more than 0.05 ft (5/100^{ths}), all shots taken since the previous level check should be re-shot. If there was no previous level check, the entire cross-section should be re-shot.

Conclusions and General Reminders

Remember to adhere to SD1's standard field procedures for safe and effective stream surveys. Although this list is not exhaustive, there are three very important things to remember:

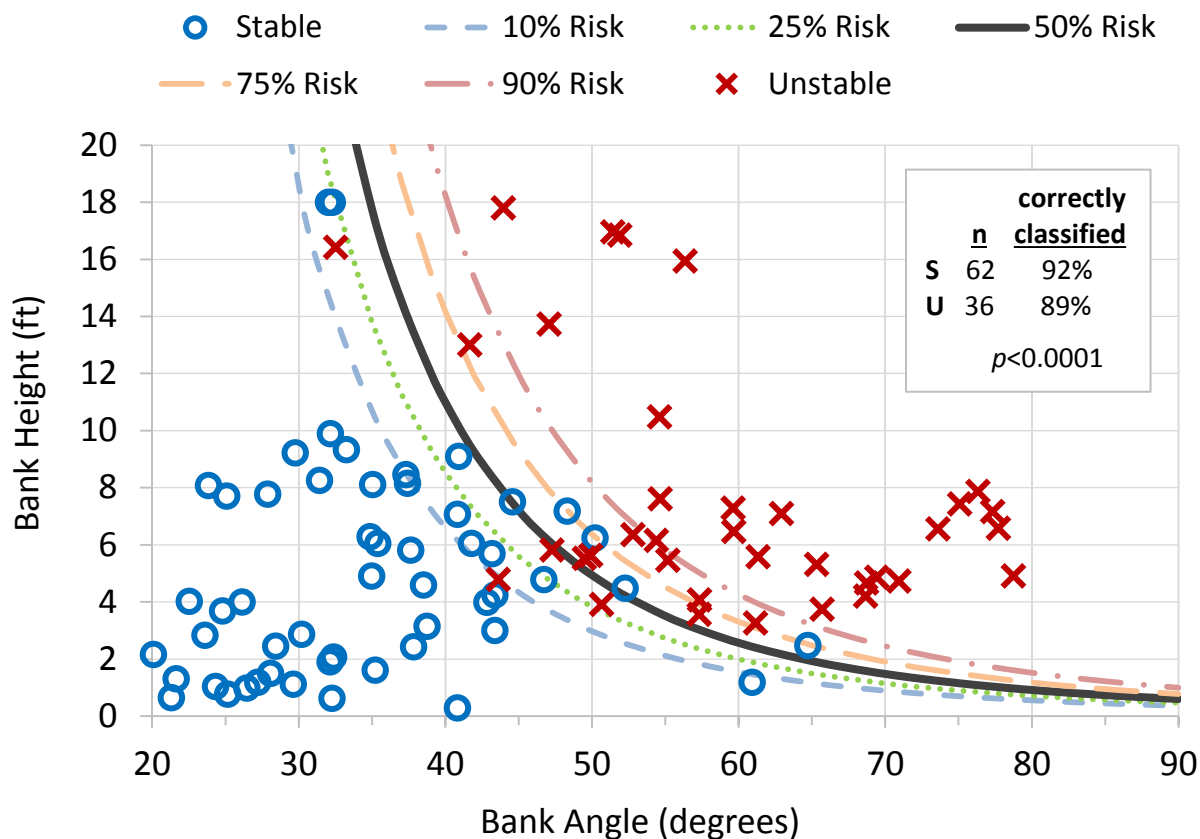
- 1) **TRAFFIC:** Always be visible to traffic and NEVER turn your back to oncoming traffic
- 2) **Bacteria/Toxins:** All streams can have dangerous pathogens and/or toxins. Remember to always wash/sanitize your hands before eating, itching your eyes, etc.
- 3) **Water/current Hazards:** Although most sites are relatively shallow, remember that flowing water can be dangerously powerful. Use care when entering a stream and never sample during rain events/swift current

References

Bunte, K. and Abt, S.R. 2001a. Sampling frame for improving pebble count accuracy in coarse gravel-bed streams. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 37(4): 1001-1014.

Bunte, K. and Abt, S.R. 2001b. Sampling surface and subsurface particle-size distributions in wadable gravel-and cobble-bed streams for analyses in sediment transport, hydraulics, and streambed monitoring. In: F.S. U.S. Department of Agriculture (Editor). Gen. Tech. Rep. RMRS-GTR-74, Rocky Mountain Research Station Fort Collins, CO, pp. 428.

Harrelson, C.C., Rawlins, C. L., Potyondy, J. P. 1994. Stream channel reference sites: an illustrated guide to field technique. In: F.S. U. S. Department of Agriculture, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station (Editor), Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-245, Fort Collins, CO, pp. 61.



Risk of Bank Failure by Mass Wasting in N.KY Stream Banks

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

Technical Memorandum

Regionally-Calibrated Channel Stability Index for Northern Kentucky Streams



Prepared for
SD1 of Northern Kentucky
July 2012

1.0 Executive Summary:

A stream stability index was developed using hydrogeomorphic field data at 35 unique sites in Northern Kentucky. Stream stability was quantified using annually repeated surveys at 28 of the 35 sites, with eight of the sites having two rounds of surveys and 20 of the sites having three rounds of repeated surveys. Expert scores, which were only assigned to sites with at least two rounds of surveys, encompassed measured rates of instability across five individual dimensions, including 1) Left Bank, 2) Right Bank, 3) Cross Section, 4) Profile, and 5) Bed Material. These individual dimension expert scores were then synthesized into a composite overall expert score on a 0 to 10 scale. The synthesis into an overall expert score was guided by independent classifications of each site as Unstable (U), Transitional (T), or Stable (S), which were considered *a priori* overall scores.

The next step was to statistically test the power of simple, field-derived, non-temporal metrics in predicting both the individual expert scores and overall expert scores. In doing so, individual stability indices for each dimension, along with an overall stability index (i.e., 'Stability Index') that could be calculated in the field in about 15 minutes were developed. Channel shape, bank heights and angles, embeddedness, riffle frequency, and the depth of the deepest pool were all significant at $p < 0.10$ in predicting the overall expert score. Approximately 74% of the variance in the overall expert score could be explained by channel shape, embeddedness, and the depth of the deepest pool, which were all significant at $p \leq 0.05$.

The stability index attempts to balance the statistical strength of metrics in predicting stability at the given sites with 1) a physically-based framework, 2) ease of application in the field, and 3) a preference toward quantitative over qualitative metrics. The stability index explains ~80% of the variability in the overall expert score, and is computed as:

Stability Index

$$= -8.5 + 0.15 * LB + 0.15 * RB + 0.3 * Shape + 0.15 * Bedrock \\ + 0.25 * Embeddedness + 0.25 * Pool Depth + 0.25 * Riffle Freq.$$

Where:

LB	=	Left Bank Score
RB	=	Right Bank Score
Shape	=	Shape Score
Bedrock	=	Bedrock Score
Embeddedness	=	Embeddedness Score
Pool Depth	=	Pool Depth Score
Riffle Freq.	=	Riffle Frequency Score

All of the variables are significant at $p < 0.05$, with the exception of the Right Bank (RB, $p = 0.54$), Bedrock Score ($p = 0.28$), and Riffle Frequency ($p = 0.09$). Preliminary validation compared stability index scores against values of macroinvertebrate biotic integrity (MBI scores), Habitat scores, and watershed development (i.e., impervious surfaces), showing positive correlations against MBI and Habitat and negative correlations against watershed development. Several important parameters, including expert scores, *a priori* scores, and stability indices are presented in a summary table included in Appendix A.

The stability index is recommended for review by SD1 and a field testing period at sites that were not used for index calibration. Although a simpler index could be developed with fewer metrics, the seven parameter model is a recommended starting point such that SD1 would be collecting field measurements for all of the metrics that showed some level of statistical significance during the calibration phase. In this regard, a model recalibration effort (if needed) could include field data from an expanded list of sites. Preliminary Field Forms for collecting the data and computing the stability index are included as Appendix B.

2.0 Introduction:

Managing storm water to promote channel stability is becoming increasingly important to SD1 (e.g., Hawley et al., 2012). Several years of channel stability monitoring and modeling have documented that historical and contemporary storm water management has tended to exacerbate channel instability. Exacerbated rates of channel instability in the urban/suburban environment are unsustainable because they can cause increased impacts to adjacent infrastructure such as sewers and roads. Not only does this shorten the life of public infrastructure, it causes private property loss, water quality impacts, habitat degradation, and overall loss of ecological function.

SD1 has collected detailed survey and geomorphic data at a subset of 35 of its ~100 regional sampling sites over the last four years. The detailed data have been valuable to 1) document the problem of channel instability and 2) calibrate more holistic storm water management tools and solutions. Because the channel stability data collection effort is time intensive (~2-4 hours per site), there was a desire to develop a simplified, statistically valid, channel stability index that could be used as a surrogate for full surveys during more routine monitoring efforts.

A physically-based channel stability index framework was developed to incorporate the multidimensional effects of hydromodification on stream channels. The framework was informed by a recent literature review of other monitoring and data collection programs relevant to hydromodification by Bledsoe et al. (2008). For example, see Vermont (2004) for a rather comprehensive stream geomorphic assessment program. Additionally, stream stability is an important component for macroinvertebrate and fish habitat, and therefore the stability index was also informed by a review of regional habitat evaluation indices (e.g., Barbour et al., 1999; KDOW, 2008; OEPA, 2009; Rankin, 1989).

Stream channels respond to disturbance in a variety of ways including incision (Booth, 1990), longitudinal headcutting, bed material transport (i.e., degradation and/or aggradation), fluvial attack of the banks and bank erosion, bank failure by geotechnical instability (i.e., mass wasting), widening (Schumm et al., 1984), and planform shifts, such as braiding (Hawley et al., In Press). Furthermore, system boundary conditions affect the degree of channel instability and the rate of responses. The relative resistance of the banks and bed material affects whether a channel may incise or widen (Allen et al., 2002; Booth, 1990). Proximity to geomorphic thresholds, such as incision (Bledsoe and Watson, 2001b) or bank failure by mass wasting (Thorne and Osman, 1988) affect channel evolution sequences and rates, and have implications regarding quantity and duration of sediment load that may be supplied from channel erosion (e.g., Watson et al., 2002).

Channel response magnitude can also be significantly affected by bed and/or bank hardpoints. For example, Hawley (2009) and Hawley et al. (In Press) showed that channel enlargement, incision depth, and bank height all increased moving upstream from a hardpoint, such as natural bedrock or artificial grade control (e.g., a concrete encased utility line). This trend has been verified in Northern Kentucky with data collected for two recent pilot projects in the headwaters of the Pleasant Run and Threemile Creek watersheds (Hawley et al., 2012).

SD1 synthesized this knowledge to inform its channel stability monitoring program, which has since documented all of the listed responses discussed above with the exception of planform shifts to braiding. The responses and associated risk factors can be classified into geomorphic categories of vertical (e.g., bed material, channel shape, and longitudinal profile) and lateral susceptibility (bank strength and proximity to mass wasting threshold) after Bledsoe et al. (In Press). The preliminary stability index developed herein was synthesized from this nexus of recent and relevant literature, a fundamental understanding of fluvial geomorphology in the urban/suburban environment, and the incredibly rich dataset collected by SD1.

3.0 Data Collection:

Initiated in 2008, the SD1 hydromodification monitoring program established 24 detailed hydrogeomorphic survey locations (including cross sections, profiles, and pebble counts) and has since been expanded by 11 for a total of 35 unique sites. Each was surveyed according to a standard operating procedure (SD1, 2009) based on industry standard techniques (Bunte and Abt, 2001a; Bunte and Abt, 2001b; Harrelson et al., 1994; Potyondy and Bunte, 2002). 28 of the sites have at least two rounds of survey data and 20 sites have three rounds of survey data, with each survey round separated by approximately one year. These data have been systematically processed, including adjustments for field errors, and are presented as an Appendix to a complementary memo entitled, “Three Rounds of Hydromodification Field Surveys.”

4.0 Methods:

Measuring and Rating Observed Instability:

SD1 collected detailed data along three distinct dimensions: 1) channel cross section survey, 2) longitudinal profile survey, and 3) bed material particle counts. Because bank stability is an often integral component of overall channel stability (e.g., Bledsoe et al., In Press; Pfankuch, 1978; Rosgen, 1996; Simon and Rinaldi, 2000; Watson et al., 2002; Watson et al., 1988), the bank height and angle of each bank was measured using the channel cross section survey. This expanded the total subcategories of overall channel stability to five, including:

- 1) Left Bank Stability
- 2) Right Bank Stability
- 3) Channel Cross Section Stability
- 4) Channel Profile Stability
- 5) Bed Material Stability

Repeated surveys and pebble counts document how each dimension changed between survey dates, with systematic measurements made for each dimension for consistency across all sites. For example, top of bank was defined as the point at which a defined bank breaks to an angle of less than ~15 degrees for a horizontal distance of at least three feet. This determination was considered to be appropriate in representing the risk of mass wasting geotechnical failure after Osman and Thorne (1988). The threshold is likely conservative given the generally cohesive nature of Northern Kentucky banks; however, these expert assessments adhere to the precautionary principal to err on the side of attributing greater risk when making subjective decisions.

Accordingly, the stability of each bank height and angle was classified based on photographs into categories of stable, unstable dominated by fluvial erosion, or unstable dominated by mass wasting. Again, according to the precautionary principal, banks were classified as geotechnically unstable (mass wasting) when the photograph was unclear whether failure was dominated by fluvial detachment or geotechnical mass wasting. The implications of such decisions would be to make the regionally-calibrated threshold of mass wasting bank failure (discussed below, see Section 5 Results – Bank Stability) potentially more conservative.

‘Bankfull’ elevation for each cross section was determined as the top of bank (discussed above) of the lowest bank. Using the measured rates of change in cross-sectional area (i.e., channel enlargement), the ‘bankfull’ depth and width were computed and factored into the stability rating for the subcategory of the channel cross section. An additional factor that informed the expert channel stability score was the width to depth ratio, which is a quantitative measure of channel entrenchment and has also shown significance in predicting risk of braiding (Fredsoe, 1978; Rosgen, 1996). With little risk of braiding in Northern Kentucky, higher width-to-depth ratios are indicative of a well-connected floodplain, which is important because it dissipates the

erosive energy of high flows without large increases in flow depth. Without a well-connected floodplain, large flows result in stream-bed incision, which leads large increases in depth in the main channel, which leads to higher shear stress and a greater potential for channel erosion (i.e., see *Site Selection for Sediment Transport Modeling* section and *Tables 4 and 5* of the related SD1 memo entitled “Development of a Regionally-calibrated $Q_{critical}$ for Storm Water Management”). Finally, the degree of cross section variability was considered in the score (i.e., heterogeneous cross section with several benches vs. flat, homogenous bottom with shear banks). This visual determination was quantitatively supported by cross sectional hydraulic geometry relationships that were developed for each cross section after Buhman et al. (2002).

Regarding channel profile stability, quantitative measures of changes in riffle length, pool length, pool depth, slope, and the pool/riffle ratio were used to classify the degree of instability relative to other sites. Having such time-integrated data along a channel profile is rare in hydrogeomorphic studies; however, pool depth and riffle-pool frequency are two metrics that have been used in Ohio and Kentucky habitat assessment protocols (KDOW, 2008; OEPA, 2009; Rankin, 1989). The visual amount of bed profile agreement between survey years, as well as the degree in profile variability (i.e., pool-riffle development vs. plain bed form) was included in the expert score. Because some of these metrics (e.g., pool/riffle ratio, pool depth) tend to be correlated with physical characteristics, such as drainage area and slope, ratings were evaluated for potential bias toward steeper, smaller streams.

In order to determine the bed material stability expert score, bed material gradations were visually compared across survey years. Quantitative differences in key metrics, such as the 16th, 50th, and 84th percentile particles (d_{16} , d_{50} , and d_{84}) and percentage of sand, informed the expert score, as well as the volumetric proportion of bedrock captured by the particle count.

In sum, the relative stability of each site was rated with an expert score in each stability dimension, which was based on how much change was observed at a given site relative to the full range of change observed at the other sites. Additional factors that informed the expert scores were related to the intrinsic instability of a given site for each category. For example, although a bank failure may not be captured with survey data, if the photo, geometry, and vegetation (or lack thereof) were all supportive of a classification of mass wasting failure, the bank was rated as unstable and considered to be failing. That is, physical properties that are indicative of past (and likely future) instabilities support unstable classifications in the absence of active change during the survey period.

a priori Overall Scores and Expert Score Validation:

Independent to the development of a stability index, sites had been previously classified as Unstable (U), Transitional (T), or Stable (S) based on an integration of dominant quantitative responses captured by the repeat surveys. Classifications were developed based on clear thresholds in the data, which coincided with initial “Gestalt” classifications of each site (i.e.,

what was Dr. Hawley's expert judgment of the relative stability of each site during the initial site visits, independent of watershed characteristics or detailed data). Those classifications are summarized below:

S = Stable (relative equilibrium):

- ≤ 1 UA banks
- no UC banks
- < ~5% enlargement
- < 50% bed material coarsening

T = Transition (intermediate):

- ≤ 1 UC bank
- < ~5% enlargement
- OR both banks UA
- OR Extremely active profile

U = Unstable (actively adjusting in multiple dimensions):

- > 1 UC bank
- OR > ~5% enlargement
- OR 1 UC and 1 UA bank
- OR ≥ 1 UA bank AND > 100% bed material coarsening
- OR both banks UA AND Active profile (e.g., 25% decrease in riffle length, headcut migration, etc.)

Where: UA = acutely unstable banks due primarily to fluvial erosion, and
UC = chronically unstable banks due primarily to geotechnical failure via mass wasting.

These classifications were considered *a priori* overall scores, which were used to validate the inclusion of the individual expert scores from each dimension into the overall expert score.

Analytical and Statistical Methods:

After developing expert scores by rating the overall and individual stabilities of each site using multi-year data, statistical analysis was used to identify simple, physically-based indices that could be used as surrogate measures of channel stability. The publicly available R (R, 2012) software was used to test an array of potential surrogate metrics. Measures such as smallest bank height and bankfull width were tested as an attempt to represent the width to depth ratio. Departure from reference width or reference pool depth for a given drainage area or slope was also tested.

Two of the simplest, but quantitative, measures of channel stability are bank height and angle. Hawley (2009) used logistic regression analysis of bank height and angle to develop a regionally calibrated threshold for mass wasting in Southern California as a part of a screening tool for susceptibility to hydromodification (Bledsoe et al., In Press). Identical steps to this novel approach were used to develop a regionally-calibrated threshold for Northern Kentucky, including Hawley's (2009) treatment of non-planar banks. The logistic regression model was then tested as a potential surrogate for the bank stability rating and overall stability rating.

Finally, several indices from the KDOW (2008) Habitat Index that could be related to channel stability were also tested as potential surrogates for measured change. This involved epifaunal substrate/available cover, embeddedness, sediment deposition, and frequency of riffles/bends. Although these metrics are somewhat subjective in nature, it was prudent to test such well-established indices (as opposed to new indices) in places where quantitative indices either performed too poorly or proved to be too cumbersome. In places where quantitative measures were simple to measure and had high performance in predicting stability (i.e., bank height and angle), the qualitative habitat scores (i.e., left and right bank stability) were not tested.

In sum, over 20 metrics were tested using regression analysis to identify statistically powerful, physically-based indices to include in the stability index. Informed by a literature review and extensive experience in statistical analysis, standard data transformations were tested and used where appropriate (e.g., logarithmic transformation of drainage area, bank height and angle, etc.). Variables were tested for collinearity and standard diagnostics were performed to evaluate homoscedasticity of residuals. Model performance and individual variable significance were assessed using R^2 , adjusted R^2 , p values, and partial R^2 .

Synthesizing a Composite Stability Index:

The composite index (referred to as the stability index) attempts to balance the statistical strength of metrics with: 1) a physically-based framework, 2) ease of application in the field, and 3) a preference toward quantitative over qualitative metrics. For example, there is no physically based reason why one bank should be included over another such that any differences in the predictive power of the left and right bank are truly due to chance and chance alone. Therefore, a physically-based composite index should either include both banks (equally weighted) or neither bank. Therefore, the final statistical model was adjusted to accommodate such physical truths of geomorphology (i.e., an R^2 of 1.0 was not the absolute goal). The goal was to calibrate a physically-based model that explains a high proportion of variance at the current sites, but can be anticipated to perform reasonably well at sites with similar watershed characteristics during application.

Preliminary Validation Methods:

Preliminary validation of the stability index was performed using three independent measures—MBI, Habitat quality, and watershed imperviousness. Both MBI and Habitat quality tend to be

negatively correlated with channel instability (Allan, 1995; Booth et al., 2004; Paul and Meyer, 2001; Roesner and Bledsoe, 2002), and watershed imperviousness tends to be positively correlated with channel instability (Bledsoe, 2002; Bledsoe and Watson, 2001a; Booth, 1990; Hawley, 2009). Analysis of data collected by SD1 has demonstrated that these trends seem to be apparent in Northern Kentucky as well (Hawley et al., 2012; Wooten and Hawley, 2010); therefore, a stability index should show some level of consistency with such correlations.

However, it should be stressed that this preliminary validation step is just that—preliminary. For a more complete validation step, the index should be fully tested on independent validation sites. Collection of testing-level data on independent sites may also supply additional data for a re-calibration step if deemed to be necessary after initial testing.

5.0 Results:

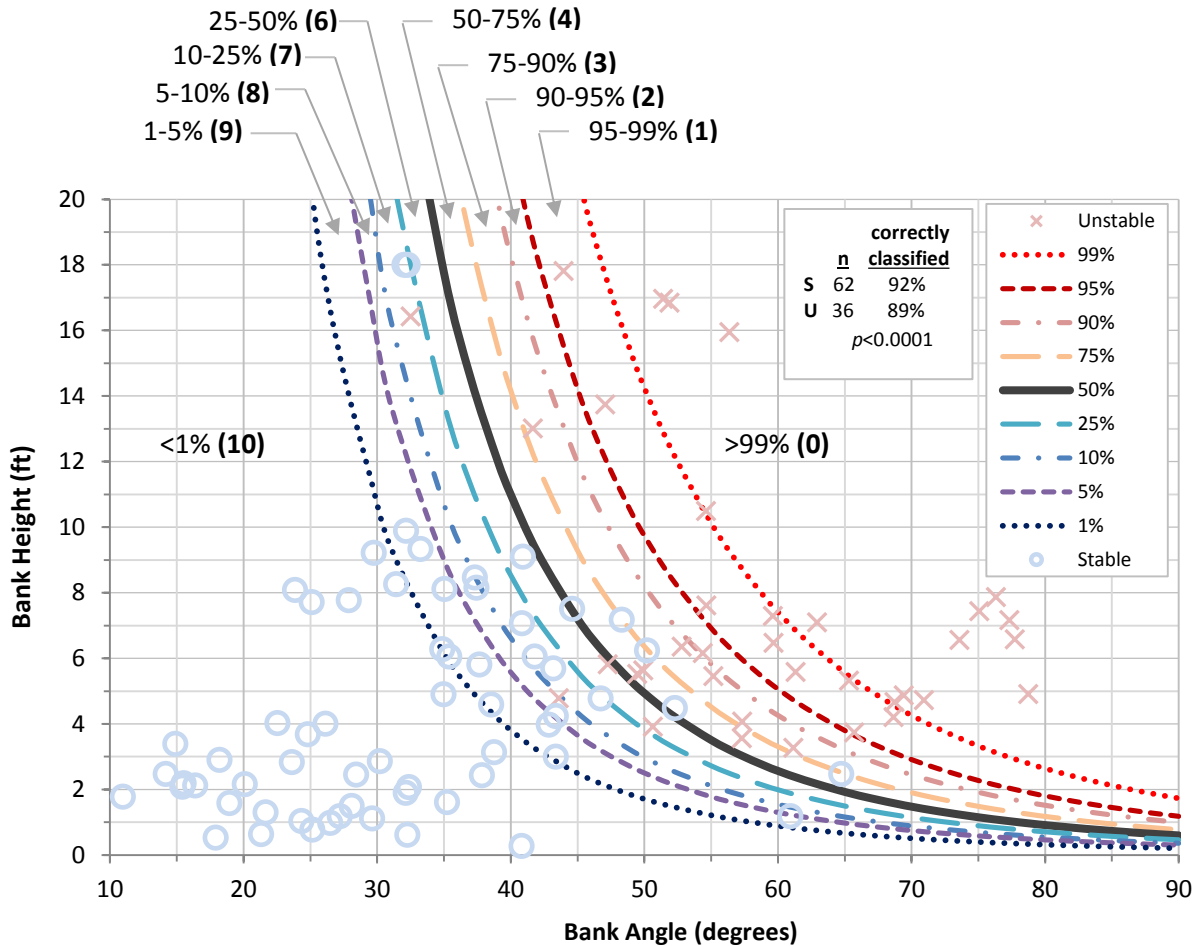
Sustainable Streams evaluated the statistical performance of a multitude of bivariate, multivariate, and logistic regression models at predicting both overall stability and individual dimensions of stability. The best-performing models are presented in the following subsections, beginning with individual stability dimensions of banks, channel cross section, profile, and bed material. Models of overall channel stability and their preliminary validation follow, with the final model explaining ~80% of the variance of the overall expert scores and showing positive correlations with MBI and Habitat Scores, and negative correlations with watershed imperviousness.

Bank Stability:

Based on the approach developed in Hawley's (2009) Ph.D. dissertation and the corresponding peer-reviewed journal article (Bledsoe et al., In Press), logistic regression analysis of regional bank data was used to predict the risk of mass-wasting bank failure in Northern Kentucky stream banks. Although the approach was developed in Southern California, the empirical model is consistent with the theoretical relationship for mass wasting geotechnical failure after Osman and Thorne (1988). Results showed that the approach was very transferable to Northern Kentucky, producing a model (as evaluated by the chi-squared statistic) that was highly significant with an overall p -value < 0.0001 . Additional transferability was demonstrated by the significance of the individual variables (bank height and angle), which was also high ($p < 0.01$).

The model correctly classified 92% of the stable banks and 89% of the unstable banks, which is another indication of very high overall performance (Figure 1). Misclassification of ~10% of the points can be explained by a combination of measurement errors and natural variability in bank strength. For example, bank angles are very sensitive to the tape station reading, which can be challenging to measure on high banks. Secondly, the systematic method to express irregular bank geometries as a composite measurement after Osman and Thorne (1988) and Hawley (2009) erred on the side of caution following the precautionary principle. In general, this tends to identify the angle of the steepest section of the bank, combined with the total bank height to

the point at which it breaks to an angle of less than 15 degrees. Third, although bank material is relatively homogeneous throughout the region (i.e., high silt/clay content), alluvial material and bedrock composition varied and could influence composite bank strength. In sum, the degree of overlap from the ~10% misclassification rate directly informs the range of the probabilities of being in either category, making the model more reflective of what the 'true' risk might be when accounting for measurement errors and bank material composition.

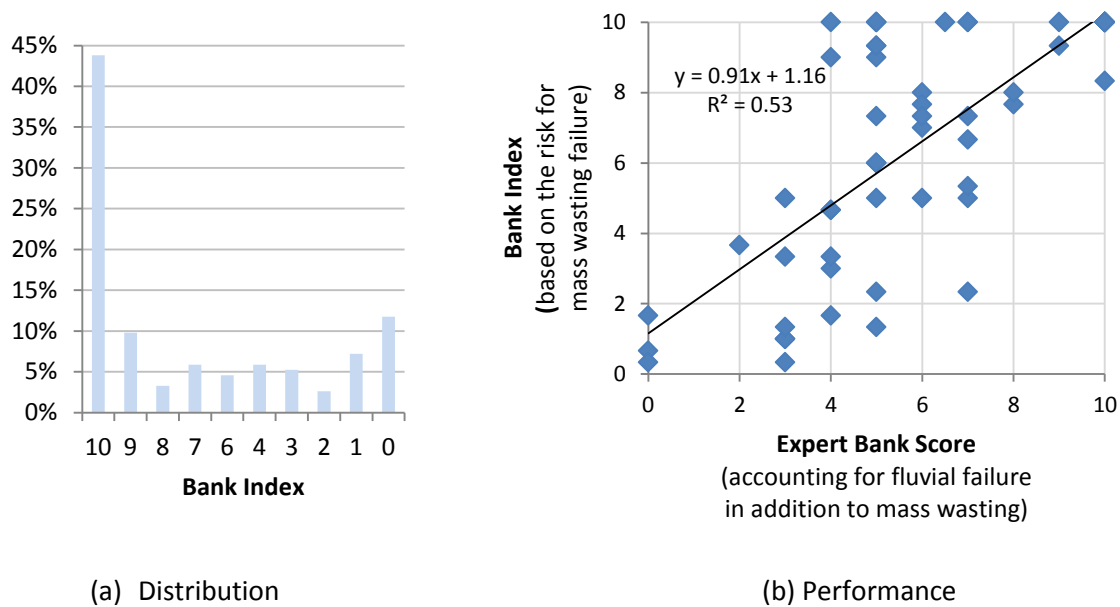


Risk of Mass Wasting Bank Failure

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

Figure 1 – Probabilities of Mass Wasting Bank Failure with Superimposed Bank Index Ratings (expressed parenthetically) and Corresponding Risk Ranges

Based on a range of probabilities from less than 1% to greater than 99% risk of being unstable, a bank index was developed on a 0 to 10 scoring system. The bank index attempted to balance the distribution of scores across the scale, along with reasonable performance of predicting the bank expert score (Figure 2).

**Figure 2 – Bank Index**

The risk of using a bank threshold that only accounts for mass wasting bank failure is that it does not explicitly account for active fluvial failure. Expert assessments of each site can account for such risk; however, a central goal to the stability index is transferability across multiple users of varying levels of geomorphic experience. Furthermore, regarding bank failure severity, mass wasting tends to have much greater potential to cause major infrastructure damage and property losses.

The bank index achieves the goal of using only quantitative measurements and removes subjectivity regarding the degree or severity of the bank failure. The relatively strong correlation with the expert score ($R^2 = 0.53$) suggests the bank index can reasonably account for overall bank stability. The distribution of scores is relatively even, with the exception of banks rated as 10 (44%); however, it is difficult to physically justify a rating of less than 10 for any bank with less than a 1% risk of mass wasting failure. Examples of a highly unstable bank experiencing mass wasting failure and a stable bank are presented in Figure 3 and 4, respectively.



Figure 3 – Highly Unstable Bank Experiencing Mass Wasting
(Site TUC0.4 – Right Bank Index = 0)



Figure 4 – Stable Bank Located on an Unnamed Tributary
(Site GPC-UNT – Right Bank Index = 10)

Channel Stability:

Numerous variables were tested as potential surrogates for time-integrated measures of channel stability. Channel width, depth, width to depth ratio, departure from reference channel width, departure from reference depth, height of smallest bank, and departure from reference smallest bank height were all tested as quantitative measures of stable or reference channel

geometry. This analysis was attempting to represent floodplain connectivity and/or evidence of channel widening in a quantitative way.

The departure from reference width for a given drainage area (i.e., reference width ratio) was positively correlated to the cross section expert score; however, the correlation was relatively weak ($R^2 = 0.09$). Because of its relatively poor performance and the fact that it would require field staff to know the site's contributing drainage area before going into the field, other surrogate measures for channel stability were explored.

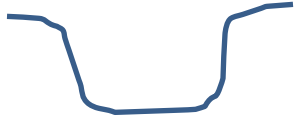

Smallest bank height (SBH) and departure from reference height of the smallest bank performed even weaker than reference width ($R^2 = 0.04$ and 0.01 , respectively); however, the metric did show signs of a potential threshold-based relationship. For example, if the SBH at a given site was more than double the reference smallest bank height (SBH_{ref}), the cross section expert score was likely to be low (e.g., SFG 5.3_Trib, $SBH = 4.18$, $SBH_{ref} = 2.04$, cross section expert score = 2.5). This was a quantitative way to suggest that the stream was currently entrenched and relatively disconnected from the adjacent floodplain. It may also be a sign of historic incision.

Beyond a single measure of depth and width (i.e., 'bankfull' depth and width), hydraulic geometry relationships for each site were developed after Buhman et al. (2002). This involved developing a power function that predicts a hydraulic metric (e.g., cross sectional area) for all depths contained by the cross section. The exponent of the power function is often referred to as the 'shape' parameter, and the coefficient of the function referred to as the 'scale' parameter (Buhman et al., 2002). The 'shape' parameter could account for 13% of the variance in the cross section expert score when withholding three outliers (DRC1.0, GPC14.7, and LOC0.8). Higher values of the 'shape' parameter were consistent with greater irregularity in cross section form, and lower values tended to represent more "U" shaped cross sections. The exceptions were the three aforementioned outliers, which had irregular shapes but were highly unstable resulting in low cross section expert scores.

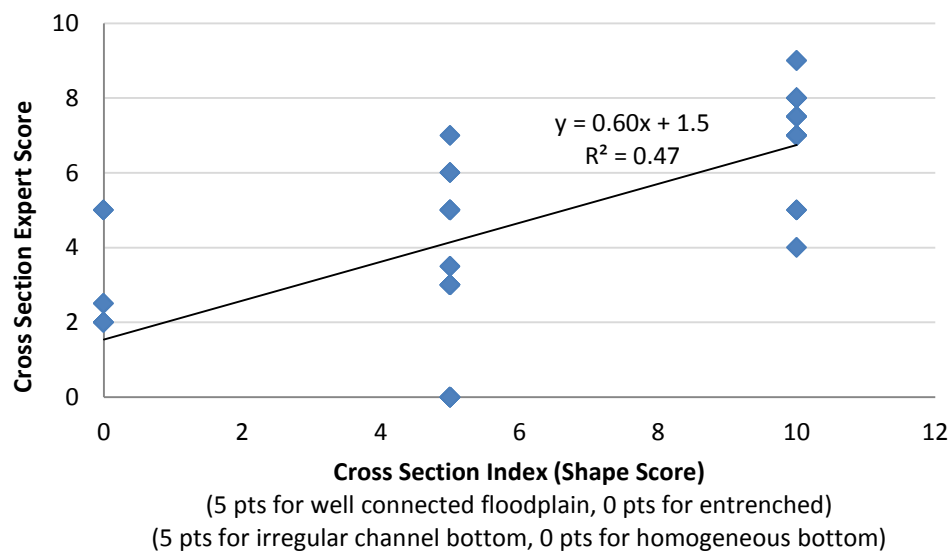
These efforts provided justification to explore more qualitative representations of the key physical measures behind those weak but physically-based correlations. Rather than focusing too heavily on specific measurements that can be time intensive to measure in the field, the key aspects to channel cross-section stability can be simplified to 1) how does the shape of the channel exacerbate or mitigate the ability of high flows to cause erosion, and 2) is the shape of the channel reflective of one that is actively being eroded or one that is in relative equilibrium?

The first question addresses floodplain connectivity, and the second question addresses cross section irregularity (Table 1). As discussed above, the better connected a channel to a broad floodplain, the less damaging high-magnitude flows are, whereas entrenched channels are more likely to exacerbate the erosive energy of high-magnitude flows. The more homogenous a cross section is, the more likely that erosive flows have scoured much of the habitat forming particles, whereas an irregular channel may be more representative of a system in greater balance.

Table 1 – Preliminary Cross Section Index Scoring System for Channel Shape

Measure	Poor (Score = 0)	Good (Score = 5)
Floodplain Connectivity on small streams (< 10 sq. mi., < 50 feet wide)	Depth to floodplain > 3 to 3.5 feet, or floodplain terrace less than 10 feet wide	Depth to floodplain < 3 to 3.5 feet, with floodplain terrace > 10 feet wide
Floodplain Connectivity on large streams (> 10 sq. mi., or > 50 feet wide)	Depth to floodplain > 6 to 6.5 feet, or floodplain terrace less than 30 feet wide	Depth to floodplain < 6 to 6.5 feet, with floodplain terrace > 30 feet wide
Bed Irregularity	Uniform “U” shaped cross section with minimal bed irregularity 	Irregular channel cross section with point bars and/or clear changes in elevation prior to reaching the toe of bank (> 6 inches on small streams, > 1 foot on large streams) 

In order to develop the cross section index, several combinations of thresholds and scoring schemes were tested; however, a simple binary scoring system for each component of channel shape seemed to balance model performance with simplicity of field application. It is possible to move to a more continuous (or three tiered) scoring system; however, this binary approach could account for nearly 50% of the variance in the time-integrated expert channel scores (Figure 5). Figure 6 and corresponding Table 2 present examples of good and poor channel stability for the cross section index.

**Figure 5 – Performance of Cross Section Index (Shape Score) in Predicting the Cross Section Expert Score**



Poor Channel Stability (Site OWC0.4)



Good Channel Stability (Site DLC1.0)

Figure 6 – Cross Section Channel Stability Examples**Table 2 – Example Cross Section Index Scoring for Channel Shape**

Site	OWC0.4 (POOR)	DLC1.0 (GOOD)
Expert Score	2	9
Floodplain Connectivity Score	0	5
Bed Irregularity Score	0	5
Cross Section Index (Shape Score)	0	10

Profile Stability:

Profile stability tends to be positively correlated with high quality habitat (Figure 7). The same physical characteristics that make a profile stable tend to be important for habitat as well. Pools and riffles (or steps and pools in steeper systems) provide hydraulic roughness that dissipates the erosive energy of the flowing water and a variety of habitats needed for a diverse biologic community. Heterogeneity within the stream bed provides a good mix of well-developed, stable pools and riffles (or step-pools) serving both geomorphic and habitat functions, as different groups of macroinvertebrates and fishes tend to prefer distinct habitat settings, such as fast flowing-riffles or slow-flowing pools.

One response that SD1 has been measuring since 2008 is the shortening of riffles and the lengthening of pools in urban watersheds (see corresponding memo, entitled “Three Rounds of Hydromodification Field Surveys”). The ratio of pool length to riffle length in a reach offers a simple way to compare these lengths across different sites. Another way to think of the ‘pool/riffle ratio’ is as a measure of how many riffles does it take to fit in one pool. A high pool/riffle ratio indicates that the pools are much longer than the corresponding riffles.

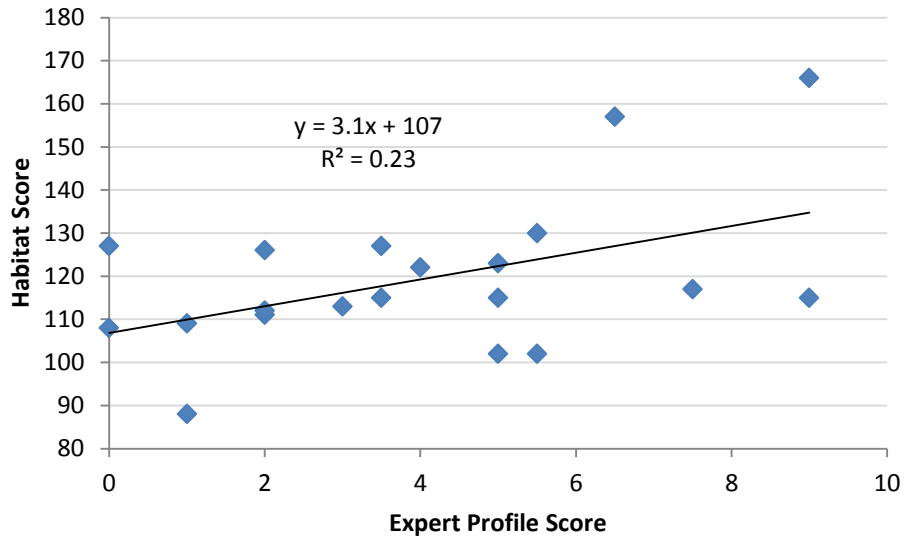


Figure 7 – Habitat Scores Positively Correlated with Expert Profile Scores Based on Relative Profile Stability over 2 to 3 Years of Repeated Surveys

The shortening of riffles and/or the increase of the pool/riffle ratio over repeated surveys directly informed the profile expert scores. However, it was difficult to account for this measure in a simple profile index. This is largely because the pool/riffle ratio is highly sensitive to channel slope (Figure 8), which would require detailed surveys and data processing.

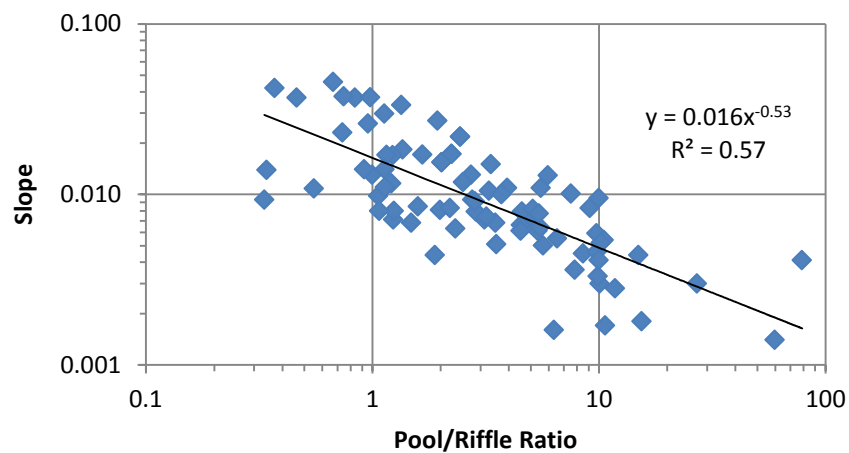


Figure 8 – Slope Negatively Correlated to the Pool/Riffle Ratio

In this case, the ease of a more qualitative measure such as the 'Frequency of Riffles/Bends' score from the KDOW (2008) habitat index proved to be much more appropriate for a simple profile index. Independent checks were performed to verify that both the expert profile score and the 'frequency of riffle/bends' score were not biased toward steep streams (i.e., there was a good mix of scores across all slopes).

Another trend that SD1 has been measuring is a deepening of pools in streams with urbanizing basins (see corresponding memo, entitled “Three Rounds of Hydromodification Field Surveys”). In contrast to the pool/riffle ratio discussed above, the maximum pool depth (at low flow) is something that can be very easily measured in the field. Because pool depth naturally increases with increasing drainage area (Figure 9), testing the departure of the max pool depth from a reference depth for a given drainage area was also considered. Additionally, a compartmentalized approach, where a reference pool depth range of 0.25 to 1.5 feet is typical on small streams (< 50 feet wide or < 10 square miles), and a range of 1 to 2 feet is typical on larger streams, was also tested. Such an approach has both a physical basis and a precedent in the qualitative habitat literature (Barbour et al., 1999; e.g., OEPA, 2009; Rankin, 1989).

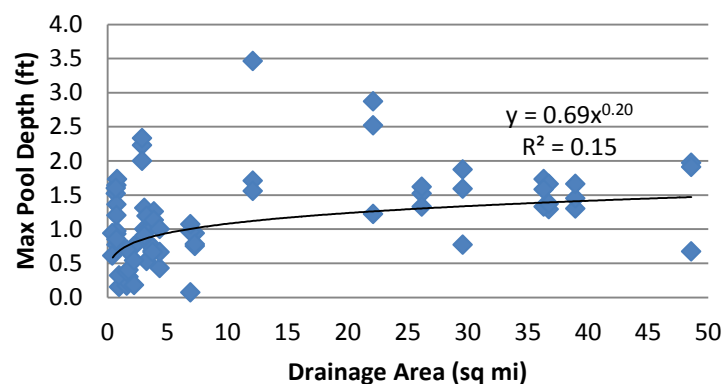


Figure 9 – Max Pool Depth Positively Correlated to Drainage Area

In the dataset, however, a simpler method proved to have greater predictive power for accounting for departure from reference pool depth and indications of profile instability. A maximum pool depth threshold of 2.5 feet proved to have the best performance at screening those sites with excessively deep pools—pools that had been scoured out by a very erosive flow regime and also had very active bed profiles. Alternatively, the prevalence of bedrock (as classified by the scoring scheme discussed below) proved to have high performance at screening sites with very shallow pools and poorly developed riffles.

In aggregate, the riffle frequency score (KDOW, 2008), pool depth score (<2.5 feet = 10, > 2.5 feet = 0), and the bedrock score (<2% = 10, 2-10% = 4, >10% = 0) explained ~45% of the variance in the Expert Profile Scores (Figure 10). Each of the variables were significant at the $p < 0.25$ level (Riffle Freq. $p = 0.03$, Pool Depth Score $p = 0.15$ and Bedrock Score $p = 0.24$). Figure 11 presents examples of profile data and significant changes over three years of data.

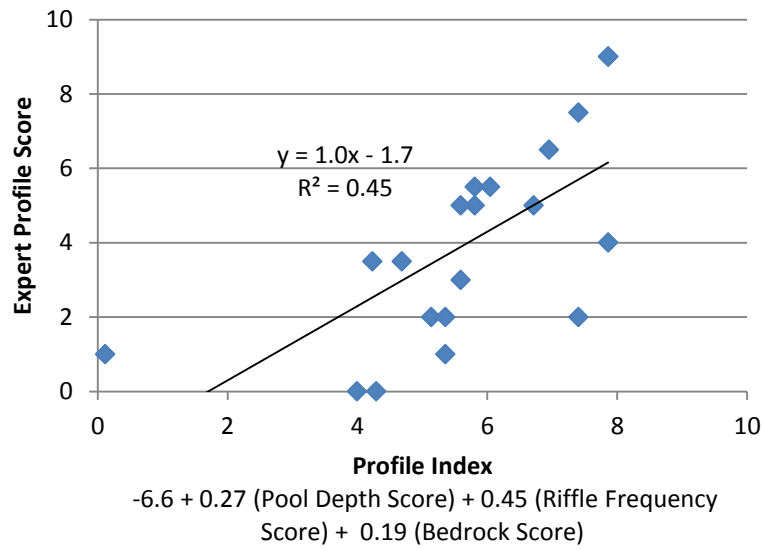


Figure 10 – Expert Profile Score Well-predicted by Weighted Combinations of Pool Depth, Riffle Frequency, and Bedrock Scores

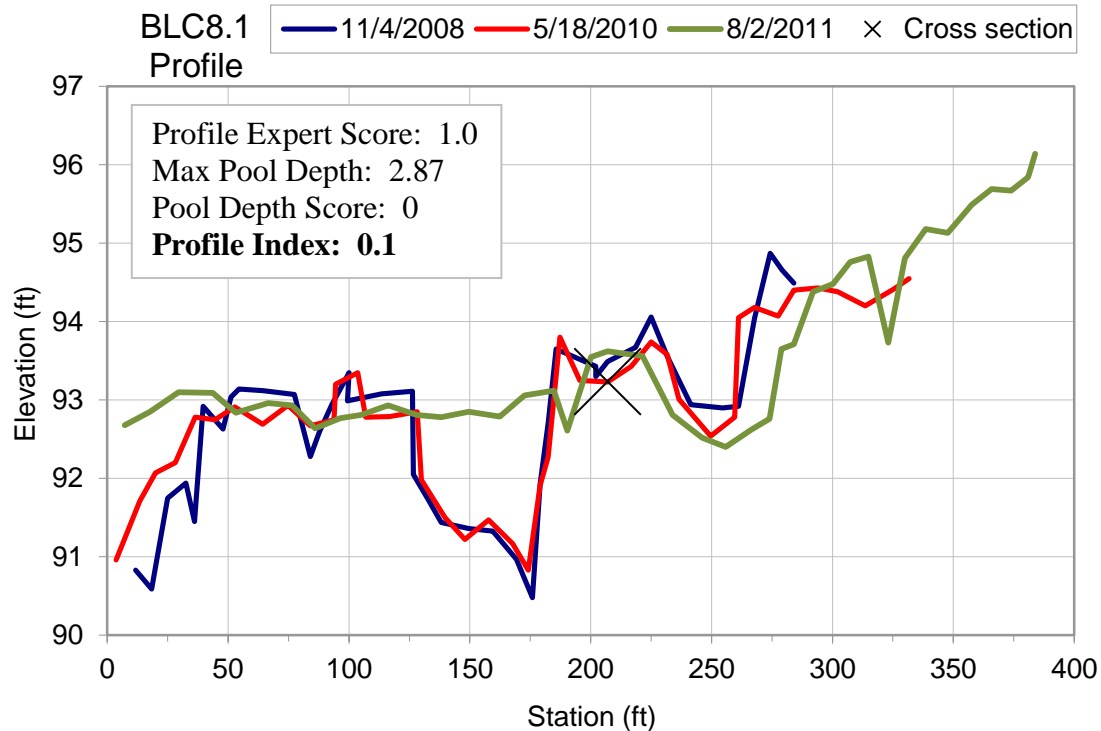
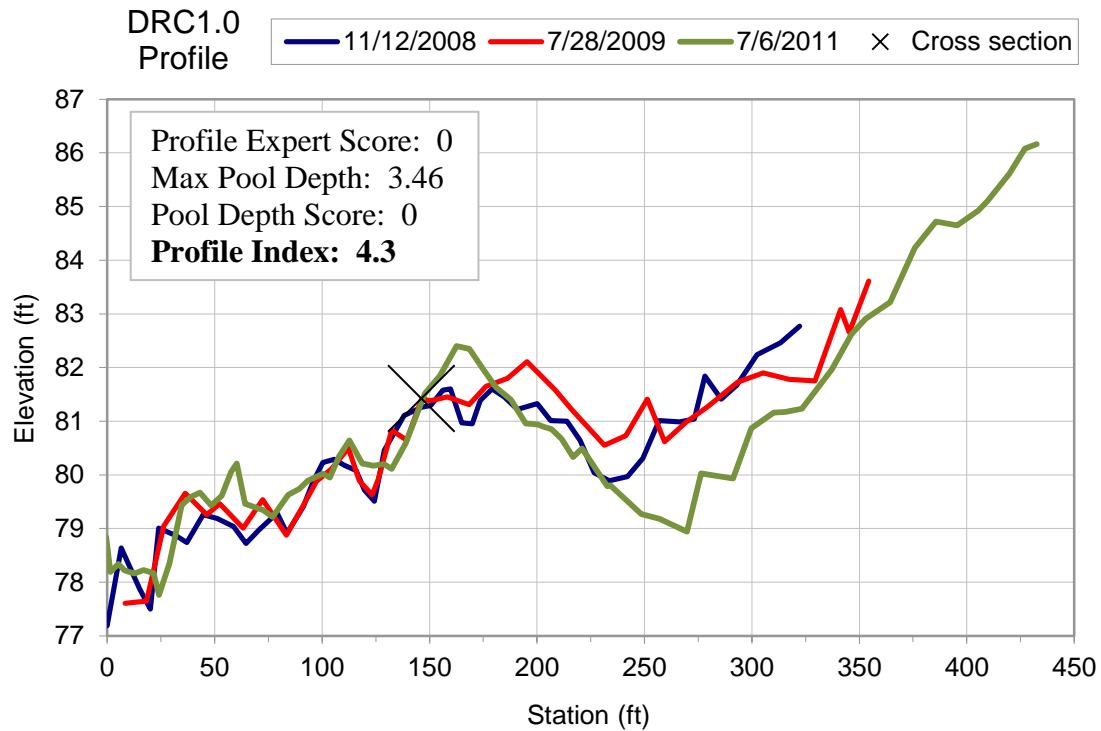


Figure 11 – Examples of Profiles that have Changed Over Three Years of Data

Bed Material Stability:

Expert bed material scores were assigned based on monitored changes in bed material composition over three years of annually-repeated pebble counts. Other factors that influenced the expert scores were the relative spread of bed material particles (i.e., having a good distribution of different size ranges), and the absence or dominance of bedrock.

Bed coarsening was observed at many of the sites in developing watersheds (< 15% impervious area), but the trend was only significant to the $p < 0.15$ level (see corresponding memo, entitled “Three Rounds of Hydromodification Field Surveys”). The response has a strong physical basis in that increases in erosive energy to a system would increase the sediment transport capacity. Without increased supply of sediment to the reach, bed coarsening (by downstream transport of the finer materials) is an expected response.

Without annually repeated pebble counts at all of SD1 sites, more simplistic measures were tested for their statistical power in predicting the expert bed material scores. Median grain size (d50) and the 84th percentile particle (d84) were both negatively correlated to the expert bed material scores (Figure 8 (a) and (b)); however, those metrics would require collecting and processing 100-particle pebble counts at each site. Doing so would add potentially unnecessary time and cost to the stability index.

The percentage of bedrock comprising the 100-particle pebble count explained a greater portion of the variance of the bed material expert score. Moreover, the data fell out into three groupings, which supported a relatively simple incorporation into the bed material index. Sites with essentially no bedrock (< 2%) scored relatively well, sites with some exposed bedrock (2-10%) relatively poorly, and sites with a large amount of exposed bedrock (> 10%) scored very poorly (Figure 12 (c)). Statistical optimization ($R^2 = 0.39$) resulted in scores of 10, 4, and 0 for the respective ranges (Figure 12 (d)). Examples of the ranges of bedrock and associated bedrock scores are illustrated in Figure 13. Appendix C includes several example photos of SD1 sites and their associated bedrock score, depending on the percent bedrock at the site.

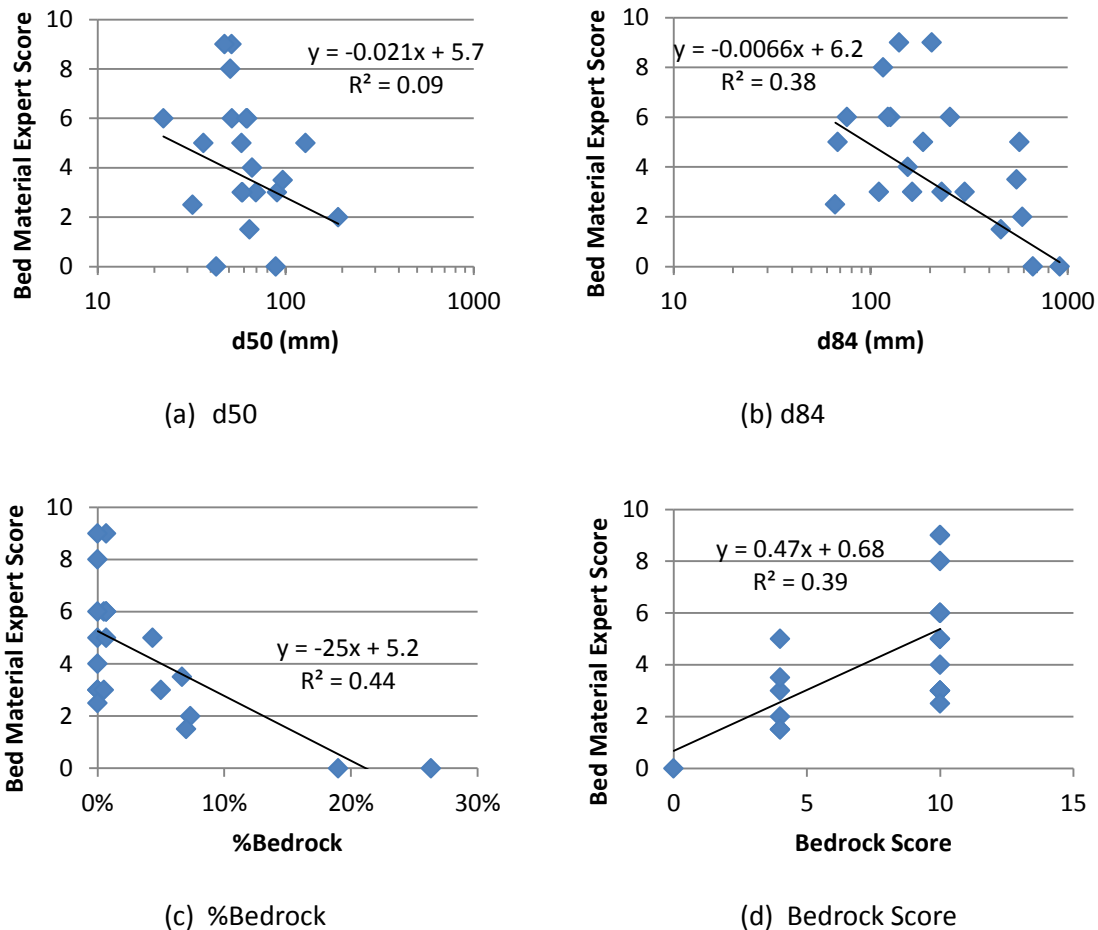


Figure 12 – Four Bivariate Correlations of Expert Bed Material Score




%BEDROCK	< 2%	2 - 10%	> 10%
BEDROCK SCORE	10	4	0
EXAMPLE PHOTOS			

Figure 13 – Percent Bedrock and Corresponding Bedrock Score

Related measures from the KDOW (2008) habitat index—scores which SD1 would already have evaluated at a given site—were tested for statistical significance as well, including Epifaunal Substrate/Available Cover, Embeddedness, and Sediment Deposition. A multivariate regression model that included the bedrock score and embeddedness explained approximately 50% of the variability in the expert scores with corresponding p values of 0.003 and 0.14 for bedrock score and embeddedness, respectively (Figure 14).

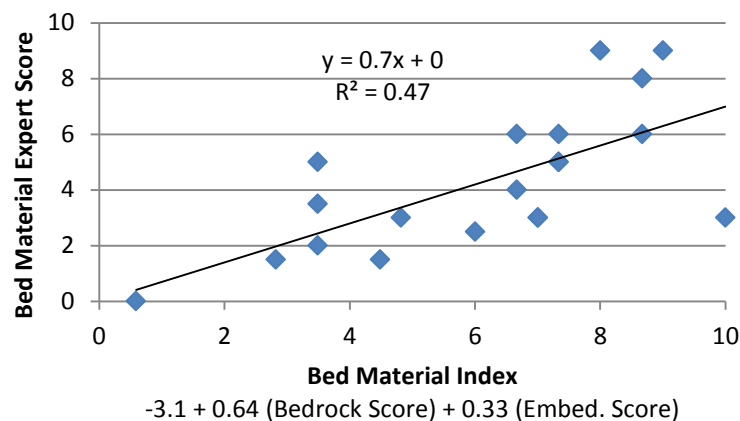


Figure 14 – Expert Bed Material Well-predicted by Weighted Combinations of Bedrock Score and Embeddedness Score

Overall Stability:

An overall stability score was developed as a several-step process. First, statistical analysis was used to determine the relative weights that the individual expert scores should have in developing an overall expert score. This was done using multivariate regression analysis to predict the *a priori* overall stability score (U, T, S, scored as 2, 5, and 8, respectively). The relative weights and statistical significance were ordered in the following ways:

- 1) expert cross section score (weight = 0.35, $p = 0.11$)
- 2) expert profile score (weight = 0.34, $p = 0.13$)
- 3) expert left bank score (weight = 0.24, $p = 0.13$)
- 4) expert right bank score (weight = 0.04, $p = 0.82$)
- 5) expert bed material score (weight = 0.005, $p = 0.98$)

These statistically-based weights then informed a physically-based composite 'expert overall score' (Figure 15). Because the cross section and profile scores tended to have greater power in predicting overall stability, they were given greater weight than the bank scores, which were given equal weight. Despite its poor statistical performance, the bed material scores were still included in the overall score because they capture a completely separate dimension from the other components. For this physical basis, the bed material score was given equal weight as the channel cross section and profile scores.

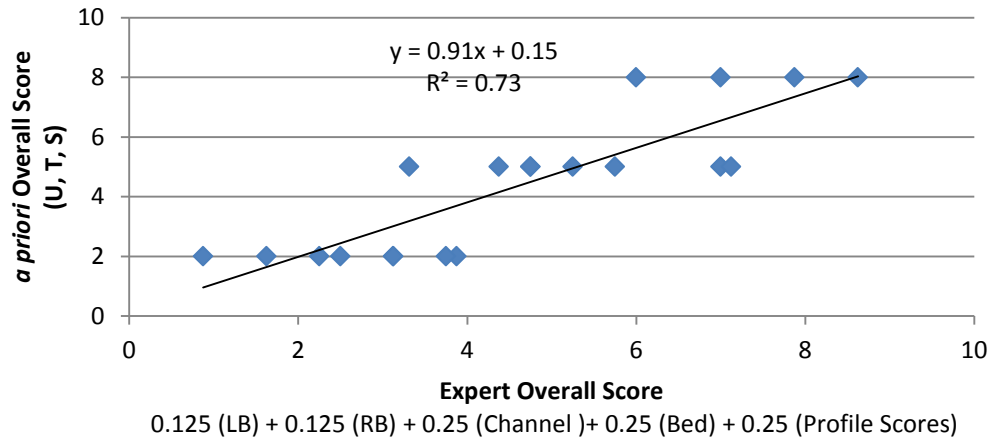


Figure 15 – *a priori* Overall Score (U, T, S) Well-predicted by Weighted Combinations of Individual Expert Scores

Next, statistical analysis verified that those same weights were applicable to the individual stability indices that were developed in the subsections above (Figure 16). By using weighted combinations of the individual indices (i.e., each bank index, cross section index (shape score), profile index (pool depth score, riffle frequency score, bedrock score), and bed material index (bedrock score, embeddedness score), a weighted stability index could account for about 70% of the variability in the expert overall score. However, in the interest of tool utility, backward selection was used to determine if a simpler stability index could be developed from the most statistically-powerful metrics that comprised the individual sub-indices. That is, rather than calculating individual scores for bed material, profile, etc. in the field, could an overall stability index be computed from similar components using less steps?

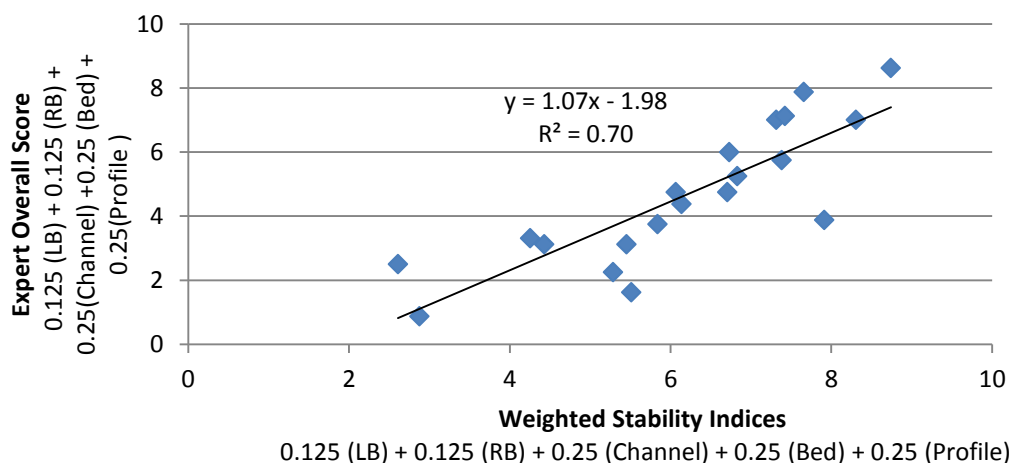


Figure 16 – Expert Overall vs. Weighted Individual Stability Indices

Indeed, approximately 80% of the variance in the Expert Overall Score could be predicted using statistically-weighted, physically-based combinations of each bank, channel shape score, bedrock score, pool depth score, embeddedness score, and riffle frequency score. The proposed preliminary stability index is presented below, with model performance depicted in Figure 17. It is important to note that all of the variables were significant to the $p < 0.05$ level, with the exceptions of the right bank ($p = 0.54$), the bedrock score ($p = 0.28$), and riffle frequency ($p = 0.09$).

Stability Index

$$= -8.5 + 0.15 * LB + 0.15 * RB + 0.3 * Shape + 0.15 * Bedrock + 0.25 * Embeddedness + 0.25 * Pool Depth + 0.25 * Riffle Freq.$$

Where:

LB	=	Left Bank Score
RB	=	Right Bank Score
Shape	=	Shape Score
Bedrock	=	Bedrock Score
Embeddedness	=	Embeddedness Score
Pool Depth	=	Pool Depth Score
Riffle Freq.	=	Riffle Frequency Score

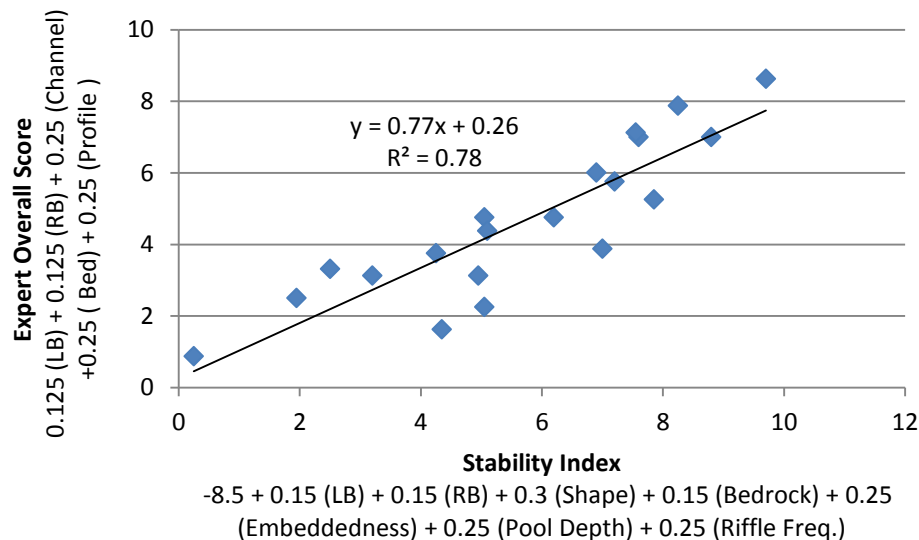


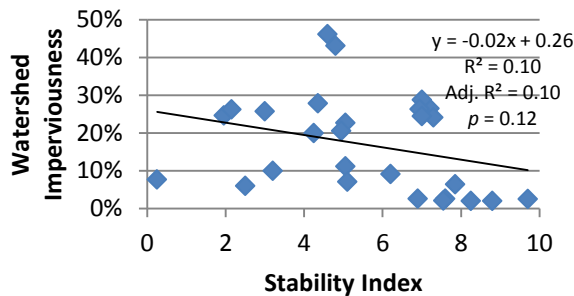
Figure 17 – Expert Overall Score vs. Stability Index

Preliminary Validation:

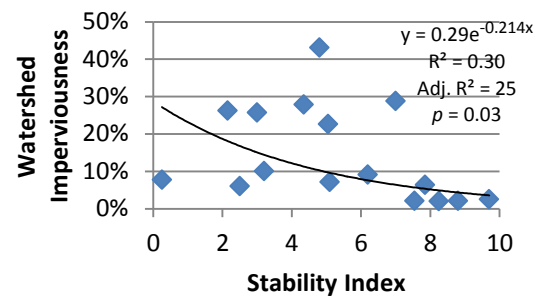
The stability index was correlated to three independent metrics as a preliminary validation step. These metrics included watershed imperviousness, MBI, and Habitat scores. Directions of the correlations were consistent with previous literature, providing a level of confidence in the stability index. It should be noted that the statistical significance of the correlations was relatively weak when evaluating all sites (Figure 18). However, Hawley (2009) and Hawley et al. (In Press) showed that proximate grade control such as bedrock and pipe crossings can artificially protect against localized stream instability. This trend has since been verified in Northern Kentucky (Hawley et al., 2012) because once the sites with proximate grade control were withheld from the dataset, the strength of the relationships substantially improved (Figure 19).

Examination of the table in Appendix A will indicate that this validation step did include seven sites which were not used during model calibration. Four sites associated with the Pleasant Run project and three sites associated with the Vernon Lane project did not have time-series data. As such, these sites were not assigned expert scores like the sites that did have repeated surveys. However, because the sites had Habitat and MBI scores, the sites were assigned overall stability ratings and included in the validation correlations in Figures 18 and 19.

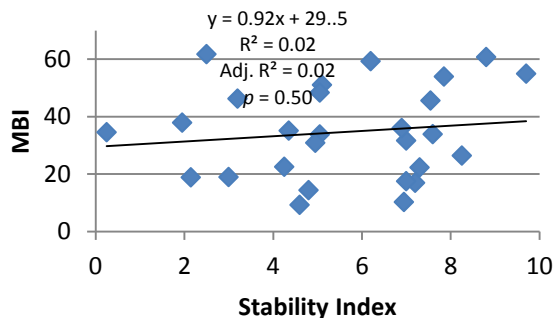
In contrast, four sites on Loders Creek, BLC17.6, BLC18.0, SFG5.3-DS, and SFG5.3-Trib informed the expert scores but could not be used for calibration of the stability index because habitat evaluations were not performed at those sites (and the Riffle Frequency and Embeddedness scores from the Habitat Evaluation directly inform the Stability Index). Performing habitat evaluations at these eight sites would be a simple way to provide an additional round of validation during the initial testing period of the stability index.



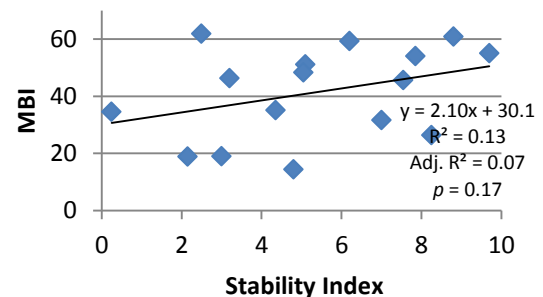
(a) Imperviousness



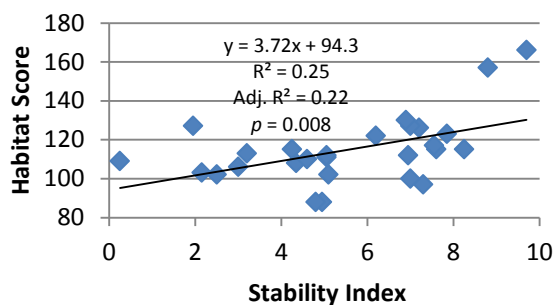
(a) Imperviousness



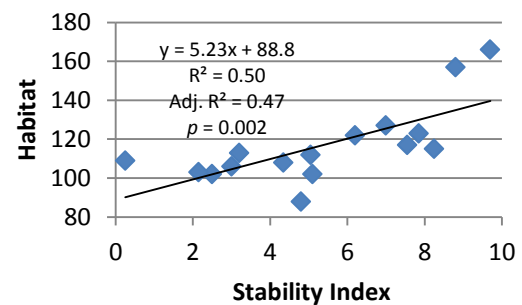
(b) MBI



(b) MBI



(c) Habitat Score



(c) Habitat Score

Figure 18 – Stability Index Validation Using All Sites

Figure 19 – Stability Index Validation Using Sites without Grade Control

6.0 Conclusions:

Sustainable Streams evaluated well over 100 models in developing this stability index. The first goal was to rate stream stability using three years of data across five different dimensions including left bank, right bank, cross section, profile, and bed material. In each dimension, individual expert scores were developed to rate the stability at each site relative to the full

range of the observed instability measures across all of the sites. An overall expert score was developed from weighted combinations of the individual expert scores.

The weights of the individual expert scores were calibrated based on performance in predicting an *a priori* overall stability rating (U, T, S). Results of the statistical calibration were then transferred to a physically-based model in that equal weight was given to both banks and each dimension was weighted somewhat equally. That is, because the time-series data shows instabilities of proportional magnitude across each dimension, it made physical sense for the expert overall score to incorporate individual expert scores from each dimension relatively equally. Because it can be argued that the banks are actually a part of the cross section, along with the fact that the banks had less statistical significance than the most of the other dimensions, it made physical and statistical sense to give the banks expert scores less weight than the other dimensions. In the end, the overall expert score that incorporates 3 years of data weighted the individual expert scores from the cross section, profile, and bed material with a value of 0.25 and the left and right bank with a value of 0.125.

The next component of this task was to develop a stability index that could be calculated with relative ease in the field. **The goal of the stability index would be to rate stability at sites without hydromodification field data on the same scale as those sites with time-series hydromodification data.** The first phase of this process was to develop individual stability indices for each of the five dimensions of channel stability. In sum, over 20 metrics were evaluated as potential surrogate measures of time-series channel stability. Multivariate models of these surrogate measures showed that individual stability indices (e.g., bank stability index, cross section channel stability index, profile stability index, and bed material stability index) predicted approximately 50% of the variance of the corresponding individual expert score for a given dimension.

The second phase of this process was to develop an overall stability index (i.e., 'stability index') that would provide reasonable agreement with the overall expert score. Individual stability indices could be combined into an overall stability index that explained ~70% of the variability in the overall expert score. However, this approach seemed overly cumbersome in that a user would first calculate the individual stability indices for each dimension and then combine them through another step to develop an overall stability rating.

As a more straightforward alternative, an overall stability index was developed that is directly predicted from seven components. Using weighted combinations of the left bank, right bank, shape, bedrock, pool depth, embeddedness, and riffle frequency scores, the overall stability index could account for 78% of the variance in the overall expert scores. Using combinations of relatively simple measures that can be computed in about 15 minutes, the stability index can achieve nearly the same rating as those obtained from 3 years of hydromodification field surveys.

The stability index was correlated with measures of watershed imperviousness, MBI, and Habitat as a preliminary validation step. The respective directions of these correlations were consistent with the literature, and the correlations gained statistical significance when withholding sites with frequent or proximate grade control, such as bedrock. However, Sustainable Streams recommends a trial period of testing and potential re-calibration depending on performance. For example, adding more sites at intermediate and large watershed areas may offer insights that were not evident in the present dataset.

7.0 References:

- Allan, J.D., 1995. *Stream Ecology, Structure and Function of Running Waters*. Chapman & Hall, London, UK, 388 pp.
- Allen, P.M., Arnold, J.G. and Skipwith, W., 2002. Erodibility of urban bedrock and alluvial channels, North Texas. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 38(5): 1477-1492.
- Barbour, M.T., Gerritsen, J., Snyder, B.D. and Stribling, J.B., 1999. Rapid bioassessment protocols for use in streams and wadeable rivers: Periphyton, benthic macroinvertebrates and fish. EPA 841-B-99-002, U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC.
- Bledsoe, B.P., 2002. Stream responses to hydrologic changes. In: B.R. Urbonas (Editor), *Linking Stormwater BMP Designs and Performance to Receiving Water Impacts Mitigation*. American Society of Civil Engineers, pp. 127-144.
- Bledsoe, B.P., Hawley, R.J. and Stein, E.D., 2008. Stream channel classification and mapping systems: Implications for assessing susceptibility to hydromodification effects in southern California, Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), Costa Mesa, CA.
- Bledsoe, B.P., Stein, E.D., Hawley, R.J. and Booth, D.B., In Press. Framework and tool for rapid assessment of stream susceptibility to hydromodification. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*.
- Bledsoe, B.P. and Watson, C.C., 2001a. Effects of urbanization on channel instability. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 37(2): 255-270.
- Bledsoe, B.P. and Watson, C.C., 2001b. Logistic analysis of channel pattern thresholds: Meandering, braiding, and incising. *Geomorphology*, 38: 281-300.
- Booth, D.B., 1990. Stream-channel incision following drainage-basin urbanization. *Water Resources Bulletin*, 26(3): 407-417.
- Booth, D.B. et al., 2004. Reviving urban streams: land use, hydrology, biology, and human behavior. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*: 1351-1364.
- Buhman, D.L., Gates, T.K. and Watson, C.C., 2002. Stochastic Variability of Fluvial Hydraulic Geometry: Mississippi and Red Rivers. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, 128(4): 426-437.
- Bunte, K. and Abt, S.R., 2001a. Sampling frame for improving pebble count accuracy in coarse gravel-bed streams. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 37(4): 1001-1014.
- Bunte, K. and Abt, S.R., 2001b. Sampling surface and subsurface particle-size distributions in wadable gravel-and cobble-bed streams for analyses in sediment transport, hydraulics, and streambed monitoring. In: F.S. U.S. Department of Agriculture (Editor). *Gen. Tech. Rep. RMRS-GTR-74*. Rocky Mountain Research Station Fort Collins, CO, pp. 428.
- Fredsøe, J., 1978. Meandering and braiding of rivers. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 84: 609-624.

- Harrelson, C.C., Rawlins, C.L. and Potyondy, J.P., 1994. Stream channel reference sites: an illustrated guide to field technique. In: F.S. U. S. Department of Agriculture, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station (Editor). Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-245, Fort Collins, CO, pp. 61.
- Hawley, R.J., 2009. Effects of urbanization on the hydrologic regimes and geomorphic stability of small streams in southern California. Ph.D. Dissertation Thesis, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, CO, 393 pp.
- Hawley, R.J., Bledsoe, B.P., Stein, E.D. and Haines, B.E., In Press. Channel evolution model of semiarid stream response to urban-induced hydromodification. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*.
- Hawley, R.J. et al., 2012. Integrating stormwater controls designed for channel protection, water quality, and inflow/infiltration mitigation in two pilot watersheds to restore a more natural flow regime in urban streams. *Watershed Science Bulletin*, 3(1): 25-37.
- KDOW, 2008. Methods for assessing biological integrity of surface waters, Kentucky Department of Environmental Protection, Division of Water, Frankfort, KY.
- OEPA, 2009. Field evaluation manual for Ohio's primary headwater habitat streams, State of Ohio Environmental Protection Agency, Division of Surface Water, Columbus, OH.
- Osman, A.M. and Thorne, C.R., 1988. Riverbank Stability Analysis I: Theory. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, 114(2): 134-150.
- Paul, M.J. and Meyer, J.L., 2001. Streams in the urban landscape. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics*, 32: 333-65.
- Pfankuch, D.J., 1978. Stream reach inventory and channel stability evaluation, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Region.
- Potyondy, J. and Bunte, K., 2002. Sampling with the US SAH-97 hand-held particle size analyzer. In: W.E.S. Federal Interagency Sedimentation Project (Editor). Federal Interagency Sedimentation Project, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS, pp. 6.
- Rankin, E.T., 1989. The Qualitative Habitat Evaluation Index [QHEI]: Rationale, Methods, and Application, Ohio Environmental Protection Agency, Columbus, OH.
- Roesner, L.A. and Bledsoe, B.P., 2002. Physical Effects of Wet Weather Flows on Aquatic Habitats - Present Knowledge and Research Needs. WERF Project Number 00-WSM-4, Water Environment Research Foundation.
- Rosgen, D., 1996. Applied River Morphology. *Wildland Hydrology*, Pagosa Springs, Colorado, 352 pp.
- Schumm, S.A., Harvey, M.D. and Watson, C.C., 1984. Incised channels: Morphology, Dynamics, and Control. Water Resources Publications, Littleton, Colorado.
- SD1, 2009. Standard Operating Procedures for Hydromodification Field Surveys. Revision No. 1, Sanitation District No. 1, Fort Wright, KY.
- Simon, A. and Rinaldi, M., 2000. Channel instability in the loess area of the midwestern United States. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 36(1): 133-150.
- Thorne, C.R. and Osman, A.M., 1988. Riverbank Stability Analysis II: Applications. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, 114(2): 151-172.
- Vermont, 2004. Stream Geomorphic Assessment Program, Vermont Department of Environmental Conservation, Waterbury, VT.
- Watson, C.C., Biedenbarn, D.S. and Bledsoe, B.P., 2002. Use of incised channel evolution models in understanding rehabilitation alternatives. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, 38(1): 151-160.
- Watson, C.C., Harvey, M.D., Biedenbarn, D.S. and Combs, P.G., 1988. Geotechnical and hydraulic stability numbers for channel rehabilitation: Part I, the approach. In: S.R. Abt, J. Gessler

- and D.B. Booth (Editors), Proceedings of the ASCE 1988 National Conference on Hydraulic Engineering, Colorado Springs, CO, pp. 120-125.
- Wooten, M.S. and Hawley, R.J., 2010. Interactions and effects of watershed landcover and hydromodification on the macroinvertebrate community of northern Kentucky streams, In Proceedings of the North American Benthological Society Annual Meeting, Santa Fe, NM.

Appendix C: Monitoring Results for GPC 14.7

- 2018 -2020 Ambient Water Quality Results for GPC 14.7
- 2019 West Basin Results
 - Water Quality Data
 - Habitat Assessment Sheets
 - Macroinvertebrate Sampling Results
 - Rapid Hydromodification Assessment Sheets

Ambient Monitoring Results 2018 - 2020

Date	Time	Location	Ecoli, #/100ml	TSS, mg/L	CBOD5, mg/L	TP, mg/L-P	PO4_as_P, mg/L-P	TKN, mg/L-N	tot- NO3+NO2, mg/L-N	TN, mg/L	tot-NH3, mg/L-N	Temp, degrees Celsius	DO, mg/L	pH, su	Conductivity	Turbidity NTU	Condition	Discharge USGS Gage
3/27/2018	9:35:00 AM	GPC14.7	100	2	<2	0.076	0.009	0.694	0.023	0.717	<0.042	8.49	9.34	7.77	1340	6.8	Dry	58.1
4/17/2018	9:40:00 AM	GPC14.7	664	4	3	0.081	0.028	0.509	0.148	0.657	<0.079	6.42	11.11	7.85	521.4	19.9	Wet	71.6
5/8/2018	10:05:00 AM	GPC14.7	588	2	<2	0.081	0.05	0.517	0.02	0.537	<0.079	17.36	9.99	8.1	696.6	9.4	Dry	20.2
5/22/2018	9:30:00 AM	GPC14.7	14140	62	4	0.446	0.142	1.28	0.804	2.084	<0.079	21.34	7.18	7.79	381	124.1	Wet	212
6/12/2018	9:45:00 AM	GPC14.7	548	5	<2	0.151	0.101	0.539	1.63	2.169	<0.079	23.04	7.8		911.8	0	Wet	10.5
7/10/2018	9:40:00 AM	GPC14.7	124	4	<2	0.171	0.128	0.653	0.571	1.224	<0.079	25.55		8.4	678.2	4.8	Dry	1.59
7/24/2018	9:40:00 AM	GPC14.7	284	9	<2	0.151	0.088	0.654	0.387	1.041	<0.079	21.95	8.78	8.55	646	9.9	Dry	13.4
8/21/2018	9:45:00 AM	GPC14.7	1460	5	<2	0.128	0.093	0.464	0.468	0.932	<0.079	23.86	8.19	SD	556.7	6.5	Dry	25.6
9/11/2018	10:05:00 AM	GPC14.7	716	6	<2	0.189	0.135	0.55	0.992	1.542	<0.079						Wet	51
9/25/2018	9:35:00 AM	GPC14.7	2068	10	<2	0.276	0.205	0.717	1.02	1.737	<0.079	20.41	8.41	8.18	430.8	20.7	Wet	116
10/16/2018	10:00:00 AM	GPC14.7	128	<1.4	<2	0.457	0.457	0.319	2.16	2.479	<0.079	10.71	11.35	8.4	627.3	0	Dry	10.5
11/13/2018	9:50:00 AM	GPC14.7	172	<1.4	<2	0.12	0.097	0.396	0.809	1.205	<0.079	4.97	12.08	8.54	530.2	1.3	Dry	23.3
3/19/2019	9:25:00 AM	GPC14.7	64	4	2	0.051	0.015	0.504	0.235	0.739	<0.079	4.62	12.79	8.18	668.2	6.9	Dry	31.2
4/23/2019	9:55:00 AM	GPC14.7	396	<1.4	<2	0.074	0.023	0.583	0.26	0.843	<0.079	15.12	11.2	8.55	563	4	Dry	37.9
5/7/2019	9:55:00 AM	GPC14.7	104	2	<2	0.103	0.056	0.318	0.951	1.269	<0.079	16.65	11.08	8.03	617.2	3.5	Dry	28.5
5/21/2019	9:40:00 AM	GPC14.7	1104	7	<2	0.303	0.254	0.147	2.38	2.527	<0.079	16.6	9.14	7.87	533.9	10.1	Dry	18.6
6/11/2019	10:20:00 AM	GPC14.7	612	5	<2	0.209	0.141	0.613	1	1.613	<0.079	18.37	10	7.41	519.3	15.9	Dry	20.8
7/9/2019	10:05:00 AM	GPC14.7	260	3	2	0.075	0.06	0.509	0.173	0.682	<0.079	25.24	7.99	8.01	643.8	1.1	Dry	2.9
9/10/2019	9:25:00 AM	GPC14.7	148	5	<2	0.121	0.085	0.533	0.076	0.609	<0.079	20.7	8.04	6.48	584.6	11	Dry7	2.4
9/24/2019	9:50:00 AM	GPC14.7	124	8	<2	0.132	0.095	0.66	0.145	0.805	<0.079	18.59	8.19	7.98	780.4	6.4	Dry	1.63
10/22/2019	10:15:00 AM	GPC14.7	32	2	<2	0.111	0.084	0.554	0.032	0.586	<0.079	14.43	10.48	8.42	353.5	***	Dry	2.13
11/12/2019	10:15:00 AM	GPC14.7	608	8	2	0.177	0.083	0.633	0.409	1.042	<0.079	3.45	12.91	8.11	744.1	23	Dry	35.6
5/5/2020	9:45:00 AM	GPC14.7	688	23	**	0.132	**	0.785	0.531	1.316	<0.079	14.42	9.16	8.22	616.8	31.3	Wet	87.2
5/19/2020	10:00:00 AM	GPC14.7	24200	122	**	0.451	**	1.29	0.374	1.664	<0.079	15.74	8.71	7.95	186.9	168.2	Wet	2240
6/9/2020	9:15:00 AM	GPC14.7	156	8	**	0.118	**	0.596	0.612	1.208	<0.079	23.54	8.16	8.12	742.6	6.7	Dry	3.9
7/14/2020	9:40:00 AM	GPC14.7	320	30	**	0.206	**	0.808	0.367	1.175	<0.079	23.09	8.17	8.15	504.3	39.7	Dry	6.8
7/28/2020	9:35:00 AM	GPC14.7	1380	33	**	0.247	**	0.616	0.251	0.867	<0.079	24.69	7.55	8.08	508.3	40.2	Dry	14.1
8/11/2020	9:45:00 AM	GPC14.7	1232	59	**	0.302	**	0.641	0.239	0.88	<0.079	22.92	7.83	8.22	392.7	103.3	Dry	23.9
Benchmark				<7.25	*	<0.08	*	<0.3	<0.3	<0.6	0.025-0.050	*			<522.5	<8.3		
Standard			<240										>4	6-9				

Note 1: Only results with gray shading were used for E.coli, TSS and Turbidity analysis. Numbers in red font indicate the value exceeds the established benchmark or standard

Note 2: March and April sampling was suspended in 2020 due to COVID-19. Safety measures were implemented to complete the May-Aug events.

Red font indicates a result that exceeds the standard or benchmark

* indicates no established standard or benchmark

** No longer collecting this parameter

*** Instrumentation issue - not collected

2010, 2015 and 2019 West Basin Water Quality Results

					Field Readings							Analytical Results										
Site ID	Sample Type	Basin	Date	Time	Temp	pH	D.O.	Sp. Cond.	Turbidity	Depth	Flow	Bacteria		Nutrients				Solids	Other			
				24- HR	(C)	(mg/L)	(µS/cm)	(NTU)	(ft)	(ft/s)	1	0.016	0.028	0.102	0.079	0.012	1.4	2				
SFG 5.3	G	West	5/25/2010	10:15	20.6	8.0	10.8	925	*	0.4	**	414	0.24	0.104	0.48	<0.0876	0.0571	1.9	<2			
SFG 2.6	G	West	5/25/2010	10:45	21.2	8.1	9.3	949	*	0.2	**	308	0.27	0.101	0.54	<0.876	0.0554	3.4	<2			
GPC 17.9	G	West	5/25/2010	11:15	20.1	7.7	7.3	649	*	0.3	**	171	0.36	0.142	0.88	<0.0876	0.0718	17.1	<2			
GPC 14.7	G	West	5/25/2010	13:30	26.2	8.5	15.1	754	*	0.2	**	69	0.19	0.100	0.57	<0.0876	0.0548	3.6	<2			
GPC 4.6	G	West	5/25/2010	09:40	21.7	7.9	7.0	622	*	1.0	**	390	0.10	0.114	0.53	<0.0876	0.0625	6.9	<2			
SFG5.3	G	West	5/21/2015	9:35	14.2	7.91	10.99	852	0.2	Surface	0.02	146	0.13	0.054	0.39	<0.150	0.041	<2	<2			
SFG2.6	G	West	5/21/2015	10:00	15.4	8.03	10.36	931	2.3	Surface	0.16	312	0.17	0.060	0.31	<0.150	0.055	5.0	<2			
GPC17.9	G	West	5/20/2015	13:50	17.6	7.49	9.85	1002	4.0	Surface	0.15	140	0.48	0.293	0.75	<0.150	0.203	<2	<2			
GPC14.7	G	West	5/21/2015	10:20	16.5	8.11	10.03	897	*	Surface	1	67	0.15	0.100	0.31	<0.150	0.074	2.0	<2			
GPC4.6	G	West	5/21/2015	11:10	17.2	7.92	7.23	836	*	Surface	**	222	0.10	0.066	0.29	<0.150	0.065	5.0	<2			
SFG5.3	G	West	8/5/2019	12:45	26.8	8.06	11.18	684	0.4	Surface	0.13	296	0.07	0.083	0.54	<0.079	0.066	2.0	<2			
SFG2.6	G	West	8/5/2019	13:15	26.6	8.06	9.16	701	0.7	Surface	**	192	0.06	0.072	0.50	<0.079	0.061	2.0	<2			
GPC17.9	G	West	8/6/2019	13:00	23.9	8.01	8.94	996	11.7	Surface	0.05	200	0.13	0.155	0.61	<0.079	0.112	8.0	<2			
GPC14.7	G	West	8/6/2019	12:50	26.3	8.20	9.96	651	4.5	Surface	0.21	52	0.14	0.093	0.58	<0.079	0.068	4.0	<2			
GPC4.6	G	West	8/6/2019	11:20	24.6	7.84	6.33	444	17.5	Surface	**	196	0.06	0.107	0.54	<0.079	0.062	8.0	<2			

* Instrumentation issue - not collected

** Visible flow but not measurable with instrument

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (FRONT)

STREAM NAME <u>SFG-US</u>	LOCATION <u>u.s. ob bridge & trib @ Summybrook / GPC intersection</u>	
STATION # <u>SFG RIVERMILE 5.3</u>	STREAM CLASS	
LAT _____ LONG _____	RIVER BASIN	
STORET #	AGENCY	
INVESTIGATORS <u>EF MJ OB SB DK</u>		
FORM COMPLETED BY <u>EF</u>	DATE <u>7/1/2019</u> TIME <u>1500</u> AM <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PM	REASON FOR SURVEY

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
	Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
1. Epifaunal Substrate/Available Cover	Greater than 70% of substrate favorable for epifaunal colonization and fish cover; mix of snags, submerged logs, undercut banks, cobble or other stable habitat and at stage to allow full colonization potential (i.e., logs/snags that are not new fall and not transient).	40-70% mix of stable habitat; well-sited for full colonization potential; adequate habitat for maintenance of populations; presence of additional substrate in the form of newfall, but not yet prepared for colonization (may rise at high end of scale).	20-40% mix of stable habitat; habitat availability less than desirable; substrate frequently disturbed or removed.	Less than 20% stable habitat; lack of habitat is obvious; substrate unstable or lacking.
SCORE <u>9</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 <u>9</u> 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
2. Embeddedness	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 0-25% surrounded by fine sediment. Layering of cobble provides diversity of niche space.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 25-50% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 50-75% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are more than 75% surrounded by fine sediment.
SCORE <u>10</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	<u>10</u> 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
3. Velocity/Depth Regime	All four velocity/depth regimes present (slow-deep, slow-shallow, fast-deep, fast-shallow). (Slow is < 0.3 m/s, deep is > 0.5 m.)	Only 3 of the 4 regimes present (if fast-shallow is missing, score lower than if missing other regimes).	Only 2 of the 4 habitat regimes present (if fast-shallow or slow-shallow are missing, score low).	Dominated by 1 velocity/depth regime (usually slow-deep).
SCORE <u>12</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 <u>12</u> 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
4. Sediment Deposition	Little or no enlargement of islands or point bars and less than 5% of the bottom affected by sediment deposition.	Some new increase in bar formation, mostly from gravel, sand or fine sediment; 5-30% of the bottom affected; slight deposition in pools.	Moderate deposition of new gravel, sand or fine sediment on old and new bars; 30-50% of the bottom affected; sediment deposits at obstructions, constrictions, and bends; moderate deposition of pools prevalent.	Heavy deposits of fine material, increased bar development; more than 50% of the bottom changing frequently; pools almost absent due to substantial sediment deposition.
SCORE <u>11</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 <u>11</u>	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
5. Channel Flow Status	Water reaches base of both lower banks, and minimal amount of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills >75% of the available channel; or <25% of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills 25-75% of the available channel, and/or riffle substrates are mostly exposed.	Very little water in channel and mostly present as standing pool.
SCORE <u>14</u>	20 19 18 17 <u>16</u>	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (BACK)

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
	Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
6. Channel Alteration Channelization or dredging absent or minimal; stream with normal pattern.	Some channelization present, usually in areas of bridge abutments; evidence of past channelization, i.e., dredging, (greater than past 20 yr) may be present, but recent channelization is not present.	Channelization may be extensive; embankments or shoring structures present on both banks; and 40 to 80% of stream reach channelized and disrupted.	Banks shored with gabion or cement; over 80% of the stream reach channelized and disrupted. Insure arm habitat greatly altered or removed entirely.	
SCORE 10	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
7. Frequency of Riffles (or boulders) Occurrence of riffles relatively frequent; ratio of distance between riffles divided by width of the stream <7:1 (generally 5 to 7); variety of habitat is key. In streams where riffles are continuous, placement of boulders or other large, natural obstruction is important.	Occurrence of riffles infrequent; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 7 to 15.	Occasional riffle or bend; bottom contours provide some habitat; distances between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 15 to 25.	Generally all flat; wider or shallow riffles; poor habitat; distances between riffles divided by the width of the stream is a ratio of >25.	
SCORE 10	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
8. Bank Stability (score each bank) Note: determine left or right side by facing downstream. SCORE 5 (LB) SCORE 5 (RB)	Banks stable; evidence of erosion or bank failure absent or minimal; little potential for future problems. <5% of bank affected.	Moderately stable; infrequent, small areas of erosion mostly healed over. 5-30% of bank in reach has areas of erosion.	Moderately unstable; 30-60% of bank in reach has areas of erosion; high erosion potential during floods.	Unstable; many eroded areas; "raw" areas frequent along straight sections and benches; obvious bank sloughing; 60-100% of bank has erosional scars.
Left Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	
Right Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	
9. Vegetative Protection (score each bank) SCORE 4 (LB) SCORE 3 (RB)	More than 90% of the streambank surfaces and immediate riparian zone covered by native vegetation, including trees, woody shrubs, or herbaceous macrophytes; vegetative disruption through grazing or mowing minimal or not evident; almost all plants allowed to grow naturally.	70-90% of the streambank surfaces covered by native vegetation, but one class of plants is not well-represented; disruption evident but not affecting full plant growth potential to any great extent; more than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.	50-70% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption obvious; patches of bare soil or closely cropped vegetation common; less than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.	Less than 50% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption of streambank vegetation is very high; vegetation has been removed to 5 centimeters or less in average suitable height.
Left Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	
Right Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	
10. Riparian Vegetative Zone Width (score each bank riparian zone) SCORE 4 (LB) SCORE 3 (RB)	Width of riparian zone >18 meters; human activities (i.e., parking lots, roadbeds, clear-cuts, lawns, or crops) have not impacted zone.	Width of riparian zone 12-18 meters; human activities have impacted zone only minimally.	Width of riparian zone 6-12 meters; human activities have impacted zone a great deal.	Width of riparian zone <6 meters; little or no riparian vegetation due to human activities.
Left Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	
Right Bank 10 9	8 7 6	5 4 3	2 1 0	

-tires as bank

-tires!

-grass lawn
-honeysuckle road

-lawn + few trees
-road

Total Score 102

Non

ENTERED IN EXCEL

7/31/19 DK

-fish carcass @ bridge!
-filetted & dumped

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (FRONT)

STREAM NAME <u>SFG</u>	LOCATION <u>D.500 bridge on Woodcreek Rd</u>		
STATION # <u>SFE1</u> RIVERMILE <u>2.46</u>	STREAM CLASS		
LAT _____ LONG _____	RIVER BASIN <u>Gunpowder</u>		
STORET #	AGENCY <u>SDI</u>		
INVESTIGATORS <u>AM QB ET</u>			
FORM COMPLETED BY <u>ET + CROW</u>	DATE <u>7-29-17</u> TIME <u>12:00</u> AM <input checked="" type="radio"/>	REASON FOR SURVEY <u>WSPD</u>	

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
	Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
1. Epifaunal Substrate/Available Cover	Greater than 70% of substrate favorable for epifaunal colonization and fish cover; min of snags, submerged logs, undercut banks, cobble or other stable habitat; and at stage to allow full colonization potential (i.e., logs/snags that are not new fall and not transient).	40-70% mix of stable habitat; well-sited for full colonization potential; adequate habitat for maintenance of populations; presence of additional substrate in the form of snowfall, but not yet prepared for colonization (may rise at high end of scale).	20-40% mix of stable habitat; habitat availability less than desirable; substrate frequently disturbed or removed.	Less than 20% stable habitat; lack of habitat is obvious; substrate unstable or lacking.
SCORE <u>10</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	<u>10</u> 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
2. Embeddation	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 0-25% surrounded by fine sediment. Layering of cobble provides diversity of niche space.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 25-50% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 50-75% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are more than 75% surrounded by fine sediment.
SCORE <u>9</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 <u>9</u> 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
3. Velocity/Depth Regime	All four velocity/depth regimes present (slow-deep, slow-shallow, fast-deep, fast-shallow). (Slow is < 0.3 m/s, deep is > 0.5 m.)	Only 3 of the 4 regimes present (if fast-shallow is missing, score lower than if missing other regimes).	Only 2 of the 4 habitat regimes present (if fast-shallow or slow-shallow are missing, score low).	Dominated by 1 velocity/depth regime (usually slow-deep).
SCORE <u>9</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 <u>9</u> 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
4. Sediment Deposition	Little or no enlargement of islands or point bars and less than 5% of the bottom affected by sediment deposition.	Some new increase in bar formation, mostly from gravel, sand or fine sediment; 5-30% of the bottom affected; slight deposition in pools.	Moderate deposition of new gravel, sand or fine sediment on old and new bars; 30-50% of the bottom affected; sediment deposits at obstructions, constrictions, and bends; moderate deposition of pools prevalent.	Heavy deposits of fine material, increased bar development; more than 50% of the bottom changing frequently; pools almost absent due to substantial sediment deposition.
SCORE <u>11</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 <u>11</u>	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
5. Channel Flow Status	Water reaches base of both lower banks, and minimal amount of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills >75% of the available channel; or <25% of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills 25-75% of the available channel, and/or riffle substrates are mostly exposed.	Very little water in channel and mostly present as standing pools.
SCORE <u>12</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 <u>12</u> 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (BACK)

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category																				
	Optimal					Suboptimal					Marginal					Poor					
6. Channel Alteration 11	Channelization or dredging absent or minimal; stream with normal pattern.					Some channelization present, usually in areas of bridge abutments; evidence of past channelization, i.e., dredging, (greater than past 20 yr) may be present, but recent channelization is not present.					Channelization may be extensive; embankments or shoring structures present on both banks; and 40 to 80% of stream reach channelized and disrupted.					Banks shored with gabion or cement; over 80% of the stream reach channelized and disrupted. Instream habitat greatly altered or removed entirely.					
SCORE	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	(11)	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
7. Frequency of Riffles (or boulders) 13	Occurrence of riffles relatively frequent; ratio of distance between riffles divided by width of the stream <7:1 (generally 5 to 7); variety of habitat is key. In streams where riffles are continuous, placement of boulders or other large, natural obstruction is important.					Occurrence of riffles infrequent; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 7 to 15.					Occasional riffle or bend; bottom contours provide some habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 15 to 25.					Generally all flat; water or shallow riffles; poor habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is a ratio of >25.					
SCORE	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	(13)	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
8. Bank Stability (score each bank) Note: determine left or right side by facing downstream. SCORE 8 (LB) SCORE 7 (RB)	Banks stable; evidence of erosion or bank failure absent or minimal; little potential for future problems. <5% of bank affected.					Moderately stable; infrequent, small areas of erosion mostly healed over. 5-30% of bank in reach has areas of erosion.					Moderately unstable; 30-60% of bank in reach has areas of erosion; high erosion potential during floods.					Unstable; many eroded areas; "new" areas frequent along straight sections and bends; obvious bank sloughing; 60-100% of bank has erosional scars.					
Left Bank	10	9				8	7	6			5	4	3			2	1	0			
Right Bank	10	9				8	(7)	6			5	4	3			2	1	0			
9. Vegetative Protection (score each bank) SCORE 6 (LB) SCORE 3 (RB)	More than 90% of the streambank surfaces and immediate riparian zone covered by native vegetation, including trees, understory shrubs, or nonwoody macrophytes; vegetative disruption through grazing or mowing minimal or not evident; almost all plants allowed to grow naturally.					70-90% of the streambank surfaces covered by native vegetation, but one class of plants is not well-represented; disruption evident but not affecting full plant growth potential to any great extent; more than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					50-70% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption obvious; patches of bare soil or closely cropped vegetation common; less than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					Less than 50% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption of streambank vegetation is very high; vegetation has been removed to 5 centimeters or less in average suitable height.					
Left Bank	10	9				8	7	(6)			5	4	3			2	1	0			
Right Bank	10	9				8	7	6			5	4	(3)			2	1	0			
10. Riparian Vegetative Zone Width (score each bank riparian zone) SCORE 6 (LB) SCORE 3 (RB)	Width of riparian zone >18 meters; human activities (i.e., parking lots, roadbeds, clear-cuts, lawns, or crops) have not impacted zone.					Width of riparian zone 12-18 meters; human activities have impacted zone only minimally.					Width of riparian zone 6-12 meters; human activities have impacted zone a great deal.					Width of riparian zone <6 meters; little or no riparian vegetation due to human activities.					
Left Bank	10	9				8	7	(6)			5	4	3			2	1	0			
Right Bank	10	9				8	7	6			5	4	(3)			2	1	0			

powerlines (right bank)

Total Score 108 ENTERED IN

NON EXCEL DK 7/30/2019

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (FRONT)

STREAM NAME <u>Gunpowder Creek</u>	LOCATION <u>Oakbrook / Linaburg Disch Bridge to old crossing</u>		
STATION # <u>GPC RIVERMILE 17.9</u>	STREAM CLASS		
LAT _____ LONG _____	RIVER BASIN		
STORET #	AGENCY <u>SDI</u>		
INVESTIGATORS <u>EF</u>			
FORM COMPLETED BY <u>EF</u>	DATE <u>6/13/19</u> TIME <u>11:20</u> AM PM	REASON FOR SURVEY <u>WSCD</u>	

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
	Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
1. Epifaunal Substrate/Available Cover	Greater than 70% of substrate favorable for epifaunal colonization and fish cover; mix of logs, submerged logs, undercut banks, cobble or other stable habitat and at stage to allow full colonization potential (i.e., logs/logs that are not new fill and not transient).	40-70% mix of stable habitat; well-sorted for full colonization potential; adequate habitat for maintenance of populations; presence of additional substrate in the form of newfill, but not yet prepared for colonization (may rate at high end of scale).	20-40% mix of stable habitat; habitat availability less than desirable; substrate frequently disturbed or removed.	Less than 20% stable habitat; lack of habitat is obvious; substrate unstable or lacking.
SCORE <u>12</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 <u>12</u> 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
2. Embeddedness	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 0-25% surrounded by fine sediment. Layering of cobble provides diversity of niche space.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 25-50% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 50-75% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are more than 75% surrounded by fine sediment.
SCORE <u>12</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 <u>12</u> 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
3. Velocity/Depth Regime	All four velocity/depth regimes present (slow-deep, slow-shallow, fast-deep, fast-shallow). (Flow is < 0.3 m/s, deep is > 0.5 m.)	Only 3 of the 4 regimes present (if fast-shallow is missing, score lower than if missing other regimes).	Only 2 of the 4 habitat regimes present (if fast-shallow or slow-shallow are missing, score low).	Dominated by 1 velocity/depth regime (usually slow-deep).
SCORE <u>13</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 <u>13</u> 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
4. Sediment Deposition	Little or no enlargement of islands or point bars and less than 5% of the bottom affected by sediment deposition.	Some new increase in bar formation, mostly from gravel, sand or fine sediment; 5-30% of the bottom affected; slight deposition in pools.	Moderate deposition of new gravel, sand or fine sediment on old and new bars; 30-50% of the bottom affected; sediment deposits at obstructions, constrictions, and bends; moderate deposition of pools prevalent.	Heavy deposits of fine material, increased bar development; more than 50% of the bottom changing frequently; pools almost absent due to substantial sediment deposition.
SCORE <u>14</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 <u>14</u> 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
5. Channel Flow Status	Water reaches base of both lower banks, and minimal amount of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills >75% of the available channel; or <25% of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills 25-75% of the available channel, and/or riffle substrates are mostly exposed.	Very little water in channel and mostly present as standing pools.
SCORE <u>16</u>	20 19 18 17 <u>16</u>	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0

tree in cross-section,
new fall

mainly gravel

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (BACK)

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category																				
	Optimal					Suboptimal					Marginal					Poor					
6. Channel Alteration	Channelization or dredging absent or minimal; stream with normal pattern.					Some channelization present, usually in areas of bridge abutments; evidence of past channelization, i.e., dredging, (greater than past 20 yr) may be present, but recent channelization is not present.					Channelization may be extensive; embankments or shoring structures present on both banks; and 40 to 80% of stream reach channelized and disrupted.					Banks shored with gabion or cement; over 80% of the stream reach channelized and disrupted. Instream habitat greatly altered or removed entirely.					
SCORE <u>15</u>	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	<u>13</u>	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
7. Frequency of Riffles (or bends)	Occurrence of riffles relatively frequent; ratio of distance between riffles divided by width of the stream < 7:1 (generally 5 to 7); variety of habitat is key. In streams where riffles are continuous, placement of boulders or other large, natural obstruction is important.					Occurrence of riffles infrequent; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 7 to 15.					Occasional riffle or bend; bottom contours provide some habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 15 to 25.					Generally all flat: water or shallow riffles; poor habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is a ratio of > 25.					
SCORE <u>13</u>	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	<u>13</u>	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
8. Bank Stability (score each bank)	Banks stable; evidence of erosion or bank failure absent or minimal; little potential for future problems. < 5% of bank affected.					Moderately stable; infrequent, small areas of erosion mostly healed over. 5-30% of bank in reach has areas of erosion.					Moderately unstable; 30-60% of bank in reach has areas of erosion; high erosion potential during floods.					Unstable; many eroded areas; "raw" areas frequent along straight sections and bends; obvious bank sloughing; 60-100% of bank has erosional scars.					
Note: determine left or right side by facing downstream.																					
SCORE <u>8</u> (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					<u>8</u> 7 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE <u>7</u> (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 <u>7</u> 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
9. Vegetative Protection (score each bank)	More than 90% of the streambank surfaces and immediate riparian zone covered by native vegetation, including trees, understory shrubs, or nonwoody mesophytes; vegetative disruption through grazing or mowing minimal or not evident; almost all plants allowed to grow naturally.					70-90% of the streambank surfaces covered by native vegetation, but one class of plants is not well-represented; disruption evident but not affecting full plant growth potential to any great extent; more than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					50-70% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption obvious; patches of bare soil or closely cropped vegetation common; less than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					Less than 50% of the streambank surfaces covered by vegetation; disruption of streambank vegetation is very high; vegetation has been removed to 5 centimeters or less in average suitable height.					
SCORE <u>7</u> (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					8 <u>7</u> 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE <u>7</u> (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 <u>7</u> 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					
10. Riparian Vegetative Zone Width (score each bank riparian zone)	Width of riparian zone > 18 meters; human activities (i.e., parking lots, roadbeds, clear-cuts, lawns, or crops) have not impacted zone.					Width of riparian zone 12-18 meters; human activities have impacted zone only minimally.					Width of riparian zone 6-12 meters; human activities have impacted zone a great deal.					Width of riparian zone < 6 meters; little or no riparian vegetation due to human activities.					
SCORE <u>5</u> (LB)	Left Bank 10 9					8 7 6					<u>5</u> 4 3					2 1 0					
SCORE <u>7</u> (RB)	Right Bank 10 9					8 <u>7</u> 6					5 4 3					2 1 0					

Bridge roads on both sides

honey suckle
- P.I.
- multi flower

storm pipe
old road

Total Score 134 entered in EXCEL 6-13-19 D/K
 usage tree fell into creek
 JULY
 Appendix A-1: Habitat Assessment and Physicochemical Characterization Field Data Sheets - Form 2

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (FRONT)

STREAM NAME <u>Gundacker Creek</u>	LOCATION <u>@ Camp East Pump Station D. 8.50 bridge</u>	
STATION # <u>RIVERMILE 14.107</u>	STREAM CLASS	
LAT <u> </u> LONG <u> </u>	RIVER BASIN	
STORE # <u> </u>	AGENCY <u>SDI</u>	
INVESTIGATORS <u>AH, OB, DK, EF</u>		
FORM COMPLETED BY <u>EVF + Crew</u>	DATE <u>7/8/19</u> TIME <u>1100</u> <u>AM</u> PM	REASON FOR SURVEY <u>WSCD</u>

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category			
	Optimal	Suboptimal	Marginal	Poor
1. Epifaunal Substrate/Available Cover	Greater than 70% of substrate favorable for epifaunal colonization and fish cover; mix of logs, submerged logs, undercut banks, cobble or other stable habitat and at stage to allow full colonization potential (i.e., logs/logs that are now full and not transient).	40-70% mix of stable habitat; well-suited for full colonization potential; adequate habitat for maintenance of populations; presence of additional substrate in the form of newfall, but not yet prepared for colonization (may rate at high end of scale).	20-40% mix of stable habitat; habitat availability less than desirable; substrate frequently disturbed or removed.	Less than 20% stable habitat; lack of habitat is obvious; substrate unstable or lacking.
SCORE <u>13</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 <u>13</u> 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
2. Embeddedness	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 0-25% surrounded by fine sediment. Layering of cobble provides diversity of niche space.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 25-50% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are 50-75% surrounded by fine sediment.	Gravel, cobble, and boulder particles are more than 75% surrounded by fine sediment.
SCORE <u>17</u>	20 19 18 <u>17</u> 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
3. Velocity/Depth Regime	All four velocity/depth regimes present (slow-deep, slow-shallow, fast-deep, fast-shallow). (Flow is ≤ 0.3 m/s, deep is > 0.5 m.)	Only 3 of the 4 regimes present (if fast-shallow is missing, score lower than if missing other regimes).	Only 2 of the 4 habitat regimes present (if fast-shallow or slow-shallow are missing, score low).	Dominated by 1 velocity/depth regime (usually slow-deep).
SCORE <u>15</u>	20 19 18 17 16	<u>15</u> 14 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
4. Sediment Deposition	Little or no enlargement of islands or point bars; and less than 5% of the bottom affected by sediment deposition.	Some new increase in bar formation, mostly from gravel, sand or fine sediment; 5-30% of the bottom affected; slight deposition in pools.	Moderate deposition of new gravel, sand or fine sediment on old and new bars; 30-50% of the bottom affected; sediment deposits at obstructions, constrictions, and bends; moderate deposition of pool; prevalent.	Heavy deposits of fine material, increased bar development; more than 50% of the bottom changing frequently; pools almost absent due to substantial sediment deposition.
SCORE <u>14</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 <u>14</u> 13 12 11	10 9 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0
5. Channel Flow Status	Water reaches base of both lower banks, and minimal amount of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills $> 75\%$ of the available channel; or $< 25\%$ of channel substrate is exposed.	Water fills 25-75% of the available channel, and/or riffle substrates are mostly exposed.	Very little water in channel and mostly present as standing pools.
SCORE <u>9</u>	20 19 18 17 16	15 14 13 12 11	10 <u>9</u> 8 7 6	5 4 3 2 1 0

HABITAT ASSESSMENT FIELD DATA SHEET—HIGH GRADIENT STREAMS (BACK)

Habitat Parameter	Condition Category																					
	Optimal					Suboptimal					Marginal					Poor						
6. Channel Alteration Channelization or dredging absent or minimal; stream with normal pattern.						Some channelization present, usually in areas of bridge abutments; evidence of past channelization, i.e., dredging, (greater than past 20 yr) may be present, but recent channelization is not present.					Channelization may be extensive; embankments or shoring structures present on both banks; and 40 to 80% of stream reach channelized and disrupted.					Banks shored with gabion or cement; over 80% of the stream reach channelized and disrupted. Instream habitat greatly altered or removed entirely.						
SCORE 14	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
7. Frequency of Riffles (or bends) Occurrence of riffles relatively frequent; ratio of distance between riffles divided by width of the stream <7:1 (generally 5 to 7); variety of habitat is key. In streams where riffles are continuous, placement of boulders or other large, natural obstruction is important.						Occurrence of riffles infrequent; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 7 to 15.					Occasional riffle or bend; bottom contours provide some habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is between 15 to 25.					Generally all flat; water or shallow riffles; poor habitat; distance between riffles divided by the width of the stream is a ratio of >25.						
SCORE 17	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
8. Bank Stability (score each bank) Note: determine left or right side by facing downstream. SCORE 8 (LB) SCORE 9 (RB)	Banks stable; evidence of erosion or bank failure absent or minimal; little potential for future problems. <5% of bank affected.					Moderately stable; infrequent, small areas of erosion mostly healed over. 5-30% of bank in reach has areas of erosion.					Moderately unstable; 30-60% of bank in reach has areas of erosion; high erosion potential during floods.					Unstable; many eroded areas; "raw" areas frequent along straight sections and bends; obvious bank sloughing; 60-100% of bank has erosional scars.						
Left Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Right Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
9. Vegetative Protection (score each bank) More than 90% of the streambank surface and immediate riparian zone covered by native vegetation, including trees, understory shrubs, or nonwoody macrophytes; vegetative disruption through grazing or mowing minimal or not evident; almost all plants allowed to grow naturally.	70-90% of the streambank surface covered by native vegetation, but one class of plants is not well-represented; disruption evident but not affecting full plant growth potential to any great extent; more than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					50-70% of the streambank surface covered by vegetation; disruption obvious; patches of bare soil or closely cropped vegetation common; less than one-half of the potential plant suitable height remaining.					Less than 50% of the streambank surface covered by vegetation; disruption of streambank vegetation is very high; vegetation has been removed to 5 centimeters or less in average suitable height.											
Left Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Right Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
10. Riparian Vegetative Zone Width (score each bank riparian zone) SCORE 8 (LB) SCORE 6 (RB)	Width of riparian zone >18 meters; human activities (i.e., parking lots, roadbeds, clear-cuts, lawns, or crops) have not impacted zone.					Width of riparian zone 12-18 meters; human activities have impacted zone only minimally.					Width of riparian zone 6-12 meters; human activities have impacted zone a great deal.					Width of riparian zone <6 meters; little or no riparian vegetation due to human activities.						
Left Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Right Bank	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Total Score

143

fully

entered in
Excel 7/17/19
DK

Sanitation District No. 1 - Macroinvertebrate Results Delivery Group 10-3-19

StationID	CollDate	Bioregion	Basin	CollMeth	G-TR	G-EPT	mHBI	m%EPT	%C+O	%CIngP	TNI	10-HBI	100-%CO	G-TR	G-EPT	HBI2	m%EPT	%CO	%CIngP	MBI	Rating
GPC 14.7	7/8/2019	BG	KY	1m2 riffle kick+ MH	36	11	5.03	39.67	34.10	55.08	305	4.97	65.90	52.94	37.93	72.17	54.35	66.57	74.44	59.73	Fair
GPC 17.9	6/13/2019	BG	KY	1m2 riffle kick+ MH	38	7	5.90	58.12	27.27	21.75	308	4.10	72.73	55.88	24.14	59.58	79.61	73.46	29.40	53.68	Fair
SFG 2.6	7/29/2019	BG	KY	1m2 riffle kick+ MH	43	11	5.90	22.26	41.61	45.81	310	4.10	58.39	63.24	37.93	59.49	30.49	58.98	61.90	52.00	Fair
SFG5.3 US	7/25/2019	BG	KY	1m2 riffle kick+ MH	36	8	5.97	18.54	63.91	35.76	302	4.03	36.09	52.94	27.59	58.48	25.40	36.46	48.33	41.53	Fair



PRELIMINARY STABILITY INDEX FORM

RDB-TIRES
as stabilize

SITE NAME/LOCATION: TH SFG 5.3

DATE: 8/7/19 SCORER: DK EF COMMENTS: US 28 bridge @ grace fellowship church

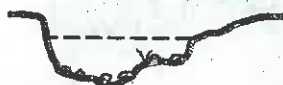
SCORE 1.85 = $-8.5 + 0.15(5) + 0.15(4) + 0.30(5) + 0.15(0) + 0.25(10) + 0.25(10) + 0.25(10)$

STABILITY INDEX = $-8.5 + 0.15 \times LB + 0.15 \times RB + 0.3 \times SHAPE + 0.15 \times BEDROCK + 0.25 \times EMBEDD + 0.25 \times POOL + 0.25 \times RIFFLE FREQ$

BANKS

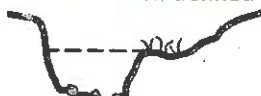
Top of Bank = Point at which Bank Angle Breaks to $<15^\circ$ on lowest defined bank

Low Bank Not Well-defined



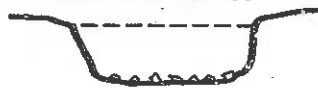
Terrace has limited vegetation and moderate creek rock

Bank Well-defined



Terrace has established vegetation and no creek rock

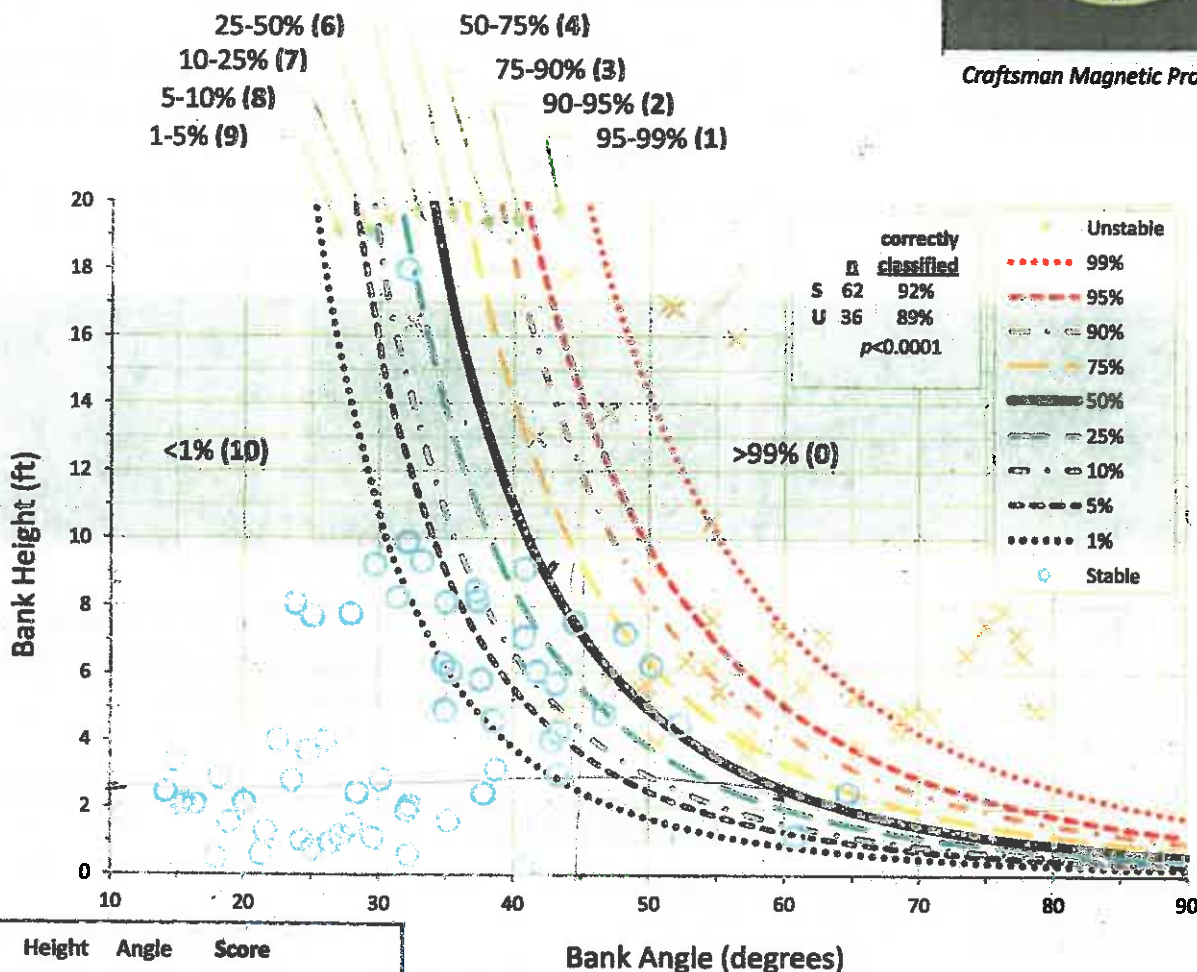
Bank Well-defined



Steep banks with no defined terrace



Craftsman Magnetic Protractor



Bank	Height	Angle	Score
Left	<u>2.6</u>	<u>60</u>	<u>5</u> LB Score
Right	<u>8.6</u>	<u>43°</u>	<u>4</u> RB Score

Risk of Mass Wasting Bank Failure

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

SHAPE

fires RDB

Floodplain Connectivity on Small Streams (< ~10 sq. mi., or < ~50 ft. wide)

Depth to floodplain > ~ 3-3.5 ft., of floodplain terrace < 10 ft. wide

Poor :
Score = 0

Depth to floodplain < ~ 3-3.5 ft., with floodplain terrace > 10 ft. wide

Good:
Score = 5

Floodplain Connectivity on Larger Streams (> ~10 sq. mi., or > ~50 ft. wide)

Depth to floodplain > ~ 6-6.5 ft., or floodplain terrace < 30 ft. wide

Poor:
Score = 0

Depth to floodplain < 6-6.5 ft. with broad floodplain terrace > 30 ft. wide

Good:
Score = 5

Bed Irregularity

Uniform "U" shaped cross section with minimal bed irregularity

Poor:
Score = 0

Irregular channel cross section with bars and clear changes in elevation prior to reaching the toe of bank (>6 in. on small streams, > 1 ft. on large streams)

Good:
Score = 5

POOR IRREGULARITY SCORE=0






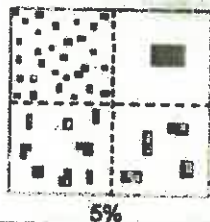

GOOD IRREGULARITY SCORE=5




5 + 0 = 5
Floodplain + Irregularity = Shape Score

BEDROCK

%BEDROCK	< 2%	2 - 10%	> 10%
BEDROCK SCORE	10	4	0
EXAMPLE PHOTOS			



Example of % coverage by volume of substrate adapted from *NRCS Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils* (Schoeneberger et al. 2002). Each quadrant contains the same total area covered using different sized objects. Use this to determine if the percent bedrock should be between 2-10%.

POOL DEPTH

POOL DEPTH	< 2.5 feet	> 2.5 feet
POOL DEPTH SCORE	10	0

DEEPEST POOL DEPTH: 1.0





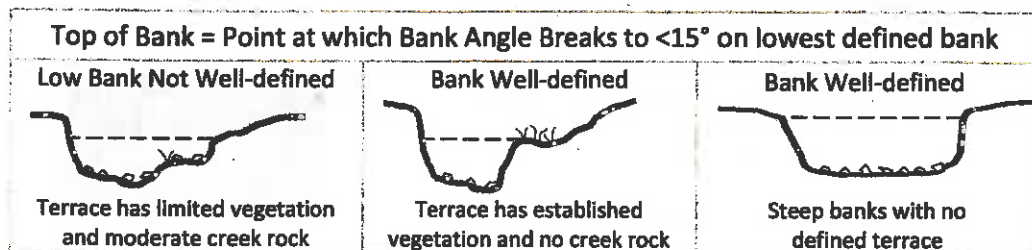
PRELIMINARY STABILITY INDEX FORM

SITE NAME/LOCATION: SFG 2.4
 DATE: 7-29-11 SCORER: EF + CREW COMMENTS: D.S. of bridge on Woodcreek Rd.

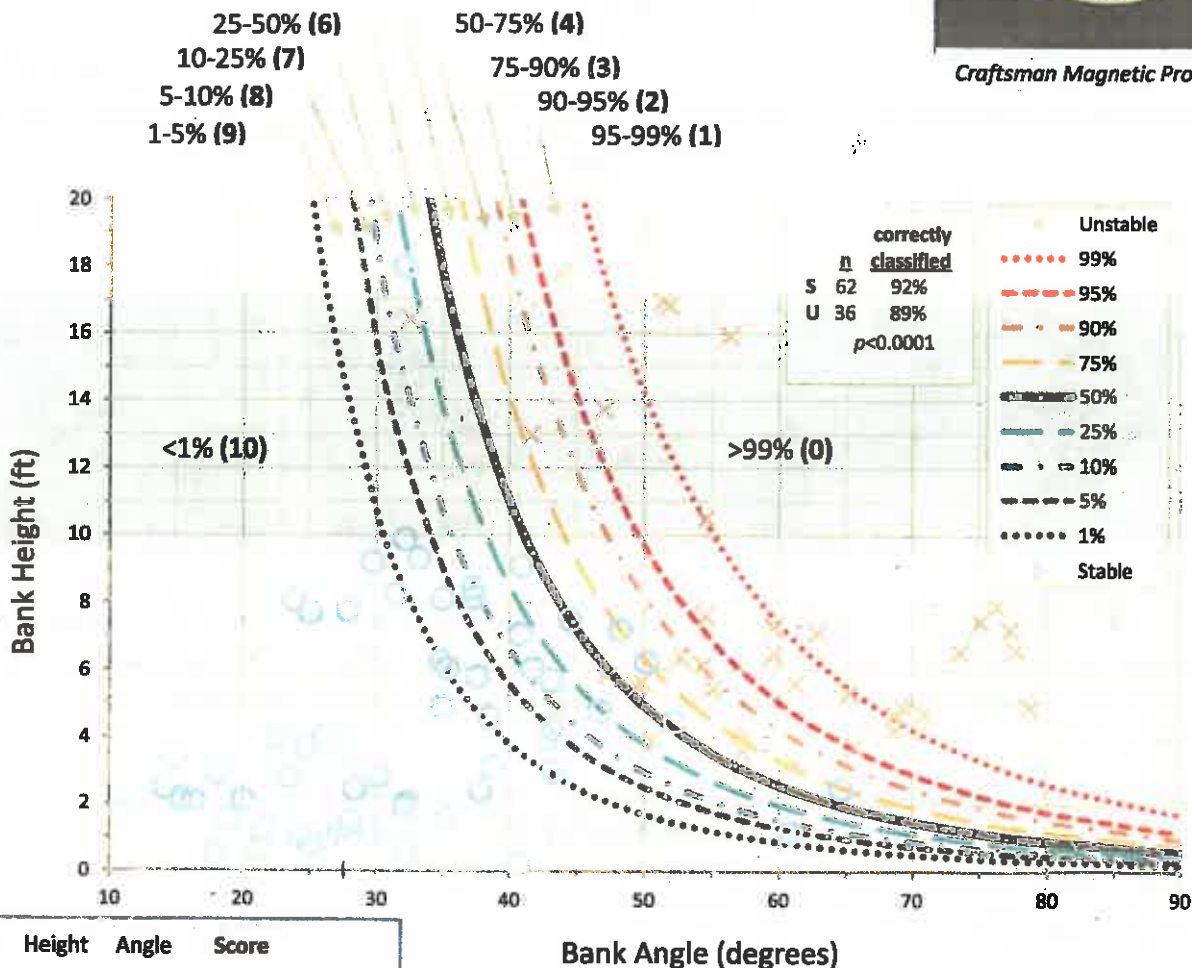
SCORE 4 = $-8.5 + 0.15(10) + 0.15(10) + 0.30(5) + 0.15(0) + 0.25(9) + 0.25(10) + 0.25(13)$

STABILITY INDEX = $-8.5 + 0.15 \times LB + 0.15 \times RB + 0.3 \times SHAPE + 0.15 \times BEDROCK + 0.25 \times EMBEDD + 0.25 \times POOL + 0.25 \times RIFFLE\ FREQ$

BANKS



Craftsman Magnetic Protractor



Bank	Height	Angle	Score	
Left	<u>2.85</u>	<u>27</u>	<u>10</u>	LB Score
Right	<u>1.90</u>	<u>28</u>	<u>10</u>	RB Score

Risk of Mass Wasting Bank Failure

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

SHAPE

Floodplain Connectivity on Small Streams (< ~10 sq. mi., or < ~50 ft. wide)	Depth to floodplain > ~ 3-3.5 ft., of floodplain terrace < 10 ft. wide	Poor : Score = 0	
	Depth to floodplain < ~ 3-3.5 ft., with floodplain terrace > 10 ft. wide	Good: Score = 5	
	Floodplain Connectivity on Larger Streams (> ~10 sq. mi., or > ~50 ft. wide)	Depth to floodplain > ~ 6-6.5 ft., or floodplain terrace < 30 ft. wide	Poor: Score = 0
		Depth to floodplain < 6-6.5 ft. with broad floodplain terrace > 30 ft. wide	Good: Score = 5
	Bed Irregularity	Uniform "U" shaped cross section with minimal bed irregularity	Poor: Score = 0
		Irregular channel cross section with bars and clear changes in elevation prior to reaching the toe of bank (>6 in. on small streams, > 1 ft. on large streams)	Good: Score = 5

POOR IRREGULARITY
SCORE=0



GOOD IRREGULARITY
SCORE=5

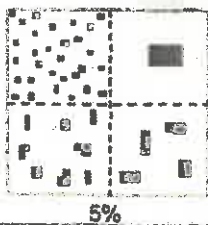


$$5 + 0 = 5$$

Floodplain + Irregularity = Shape Score

BEDROCK

%BEDROCK	< 2%	2 - 10%	> 10%
BEDROCK SCORE	10	4	0
EXAMPLE PHOTOS			

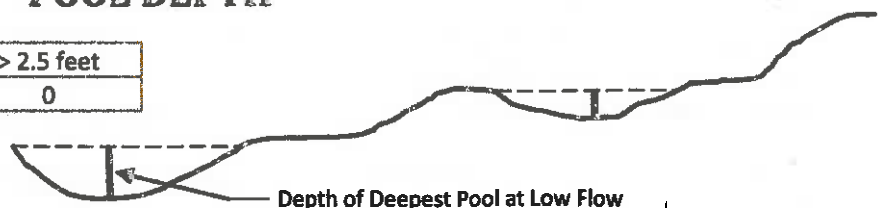


Example of % coverage by volume of substrate adapted from *NRCS Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils* (Schoeneberger et al. 2002). Each quadrant contains the same total area covered using different sized objects. Use this to determine if the percent bedrock should be between 2-10%.

POOL DEPTH

POOL DEPTH	< 2.5 feet	> 2.5 feet
POOL DEPTH SCORE	10	0

DEEPEST POOL DEPTH: 10



Depth of Deepest Pool at Low Flow



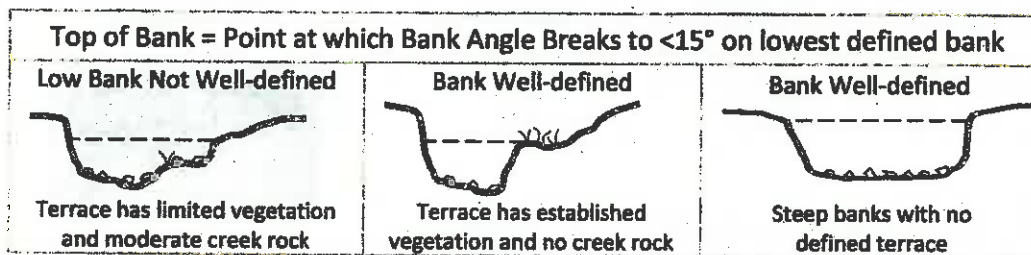
PRELIMINARY STABILITY INDEX FORM

SITE NAME/LOCATION: G PC 17.9
 DATE: 6.13.19 SCORER: EVF COMMENTS: Oakbrook / Limaburg - side road

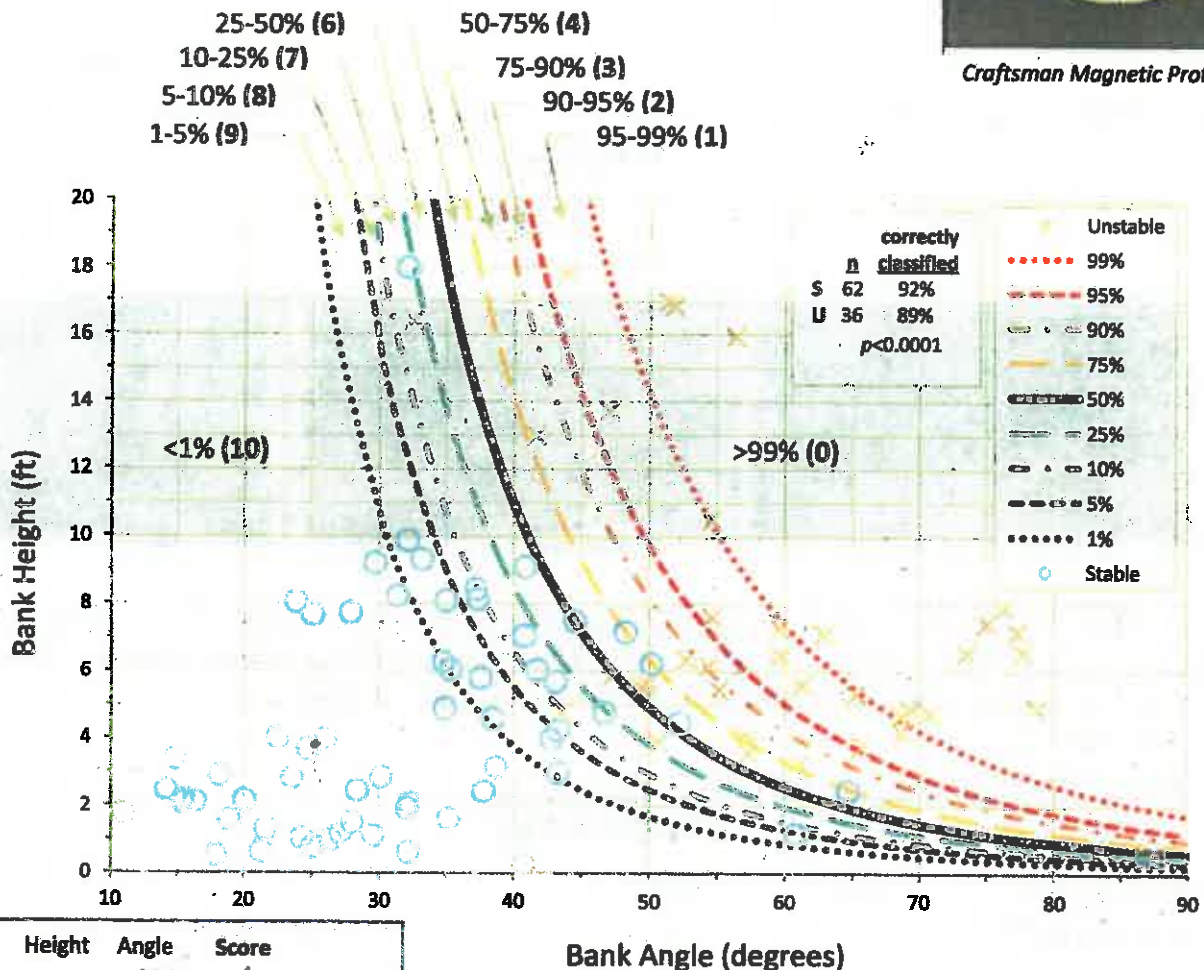
SCORE 2.4 = $-8.5 + 0.15(1) + 0.15(10) + 0.30(10) + 0.15(0) + 0.25(12) + 0.25(0) + 0.25(13)$

STABILITY INDEX = $-8.5 + 0.15 \times LB + 0.15 \times RB + 0.3 \times SHAPE + 0.15 \times BEDROCK + 0.25 \times EMBEDD + 0.25 \times POOL + 0.25 \times RIFFLE FREQ$

BANKS



Craftsman Magnetic Protractor



Bank	Height	Angle	Score
Left	<u>7.56</u>	<u>58</u>	<u>1</u>
Right	<u>3.7</u>	<u>25</u>	<u>10</u>

LB Score
RB Score

Risk of Mass Wasting Bank Failure

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

Handwritten signature/initials.

SHAPE

Floodplain Connectivity on Small Streams (< ~10 sq. mi., or < ~50 ft. wide)

Depth to floodplain > ~3-3.5 ft., of floodplain terrace < 10 ft. wide

Poor :
Score = 0

Depth to floodplain < ~3-3.5 ft., with floodplain terrace > 10 ft. wide

Good:
Score = 5

Floodplain Connectivity on Larger Streams (> ~10 sq. mi., or > ~50 ft. wide)

Depth to floodplain > ~6-6.5 ft., or floodplain terrace < 30 ft. wide

Poor:
Score = 0

Depth to floodplain < 6-6.5 ft. with broad floodplain terrace > 30 ft. wide

Good:
Score = 5

Bed Irregularity

Uniform "U" shaped cross section with minimal bed irregularity

Poor:
Score = 0

Irregular channel cross section with bars and clear changes in elevation prior to reaching the toe of bank (>6 in. on small streams, > 1 ft. on large streams)

Good:
Score = 5

POOR IRREGULARITY
SCORE=0



GOOD IRREGULARITY
SCORE=5

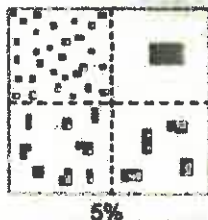


$$5 + 5 = 10$$

Floodplain + Irregularity = Shape Score

BEDROCK

%BEDROCK	< 2%	2 - 10%	> 10%
BEDROCK SCORE	10	4	0
EXAMPLE PHOTOS			



Example of % coverage by volume of substrate adapted from *NRCS Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils* (Schoeneberger et al. 2002). Each quadrant contains the same total area covered using different sized objects. Use this to determine if the percent bedrock should be between 2-10%.

pools are bedrock

POOL DEPTH

POOL DEPTH	< 2.5 feet	> 2.5 feet
POOL DEPTH SCORE	10	0

DEEPEST POOL DEPTH: 0



Depth of Deepest Pool at Low Flow



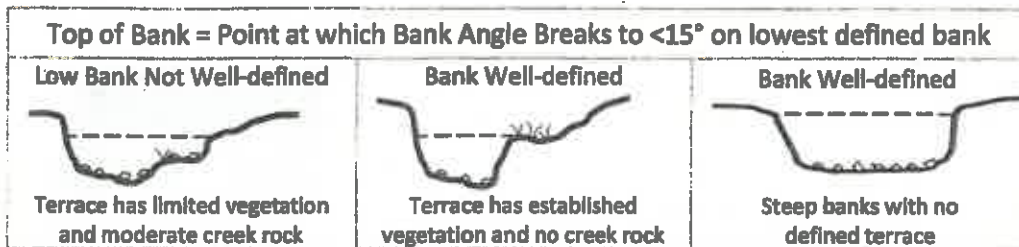
PRELIMINARY STABILITY INDEX FORM

SITE NAME/LOCATION: GPC 14.7
 DATE: 8/19 SCORER: DL ET COMMENTS: @ Pump Station

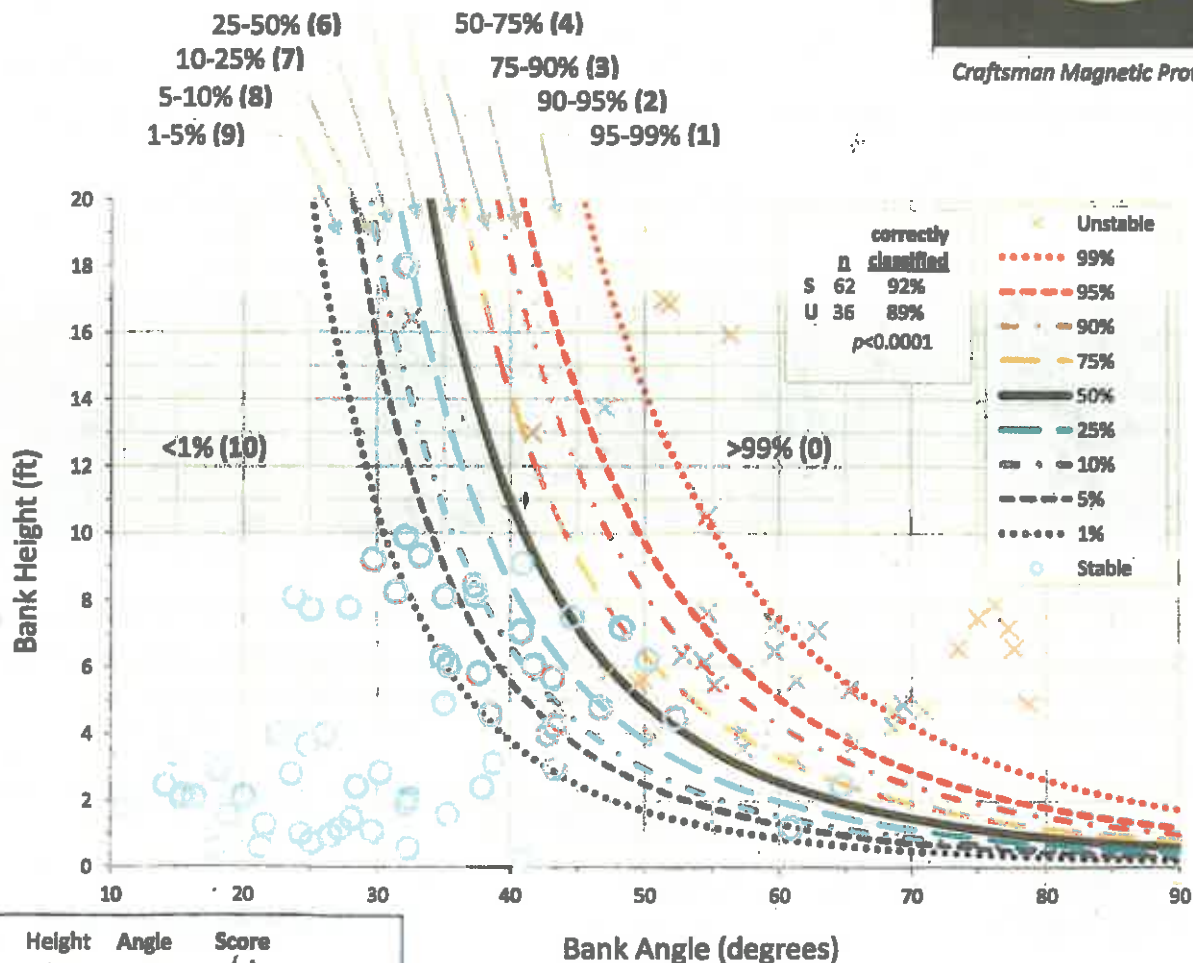
SCORE 5.1 = $-8.5 + 0.15(4) + 0.15(10) + 0.30(10) + 0.15(0) + 0.25(17) + 0.25(0) + 0.25(17)$

STABILITY INDEX = $-8.5 + 0.15 \times LB + 0.15 \times RB + 0.3 \times SHAPE + 0.15 \times BEDROCK + 0.25 \times EMBEDD + 0.25 \times POOL + 0.25 \times RIFFLE\ FREQ$

BANKS



Craftsman Magnetic Protractor



Bank	Height	Angle	Score	
Left	10.7	42	4	LB Score
Right	3.25	14	10	RB Score

Risk of Mass Wasting Bank Failure

Logistic Regression thresholds ($p < 0.0001$) developed for stable vs. unstable banks with failure dominated by mass wasting, withholding bedrock banks and unstable banks dominated by fluvial failure.

SHAPE

Floodplain Connectivity on Small Streams (< ~10 sq. mi., or < ~50 ft. wide)	Depth to floodplain > ~ 3-3.5 ft., of floodplain terrace < 10 ft. wide	Poor : Score = 0
	Depth to floodplain < ~ 3-3.5 ft., with floodplain terrace > 10 ft. wide	Good: Score = 5
Floodplain Connectivity on Larger Streams (> ~10 sq. mi., or > ~50 ft. wide)	Depth to floodplain >~ 6-6.5 ft., or floodplain terrace < 30 ft. wide	Poor: Score = 0
	Depth to floodplain < 6-6.5 ft. with broad floodplain terrace > 30 ft. wide	Good: Score = 5
Bed Irregularity	Uniform "U" shaped cross section with minimal bed irregularity	Poor: Score = 0
	Irregular channel cross section with bars and clear changes in elevation prior to reaching the toe of bank (>6 in. on small streams, > 1 ft. on large streams)	Good: Score = 5

**POOR IRREGULARITY
SCORE=0**



**GOOD IRREGULARITY
SCORE=5**

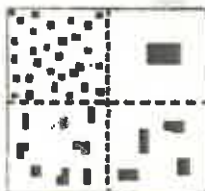


$$5 + 5 = 10$$

Floodplain + Irregularity = Shape Score

BEDROCK

%BEDROCK	< 2%	2 - 10%	> 10%
BEDROCK SCORE	10	4	0
EXAMPLE PHOTOS			

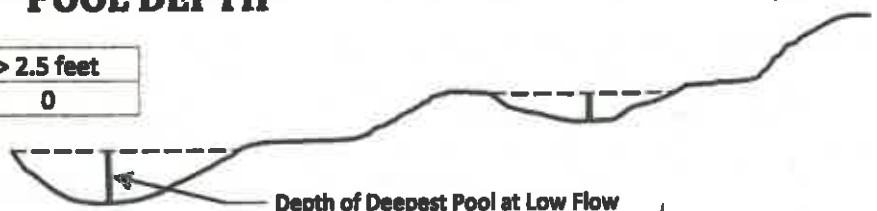


Example of % coverage by volume of substrate adapted from *NRCS Field Book for Describing and Sampling Soils* (Schoeneberger et al. 2002). Each quadrant contains the same total area covered using different sized objects. Use this to determine if the percent bedrock should be between 2-10%.

POOL DEPTH

POOL DEPTH	< 2.5 feet	> 2.5 feet
POOL DEPTH SCORE	10	0

DEEPEST POOL DEPTH: 0



Appendix D: Detention Basin Retrofit Analysis

Holbrook Lane Detention Basin (Basin Number 018.12.0667)

The Holbrook Lane detention basin is located between Singh Street and Holbrook Lane in Burlington, and is within the Gunpowder Creek watershed. The basin was constructed during the development of the Shaker Run Subdivision and collects storm water runoff predominantly from the residential development along Holbrook Lane and several adjacent side streets. The basin falls within one parcel owned by SD1 and is accessible from Holbrook Lane. The detention basin is owned and maintained by SD1, and the existing outlet control structure is owned by SD1 and is labeled as Structure Number 018.12.0617 according to SD1 GIS data. Figure 1 displays a site map of the detention basin.



Figure 1 Holbrook Lane Detention Basin Site Map

The drainage area tributary to the detention basin encompasses approximately 11.46 acres, which is displayed in Figure 2. The total estimated storage volume capacity of the detention basin is approximately 1.15 acre-feet. The ratio of storage volume capacity (acre-feet) to drainage area (acres) of 10.0 percent appears to indicate that excess storage capacity may be available within the detention basin, and therefore retrofits could potentially utilize this excess storage capacity by reducing peak flow rates.

SD1 staff conducted a site visit to the detention basin to take measurements on the existing outlet control structure. The existing outlet control structure is a 5-foot by 5-foot square shaped concrete box with a row of four windows near the top (each measuring approximately 36 inches wide by 8 inches tall), a row of 3 windows near the middle (each measuring approximately 24 inches wide by 6 inches tall) and a “low-flow” discharge pipe at the bottom of the basin. This discharge pipe is a 18-inch diameter storm sewer with a headwall that is

directly connected to the outlet control structure, which sits higher on the side slope of the detention basin. Figure 3 displays photos of the existing detention basin and outlet control structure that were taken during the site visit.



Figure 2 Holbrook Lane Detention Basin Drainage Area Map



Detention Basin Outlet Control Structure



“Low-Flow” Pipe at Basin Bottom

Figure 3 Photos of Holbrook Lane Detention Basin

Storm water modeling was conducted to evaluate the functionality of the detention basin in existing conditions, as well as how the detention basin will operate in post-retrofit conditions. Based on the results of the modeling, the existing detention basin does not appear to meet SD1 regulations for post-construction storm water management for flood control in the smaller design storms analyzed. For design storms up to and including the 2-year event, the current post-development peak flow rates being discharged from the detention basin are higher than pre-development peak flow rates, despite only approximately 56 percent of the storage volume being utilized during the 100-year design storm.

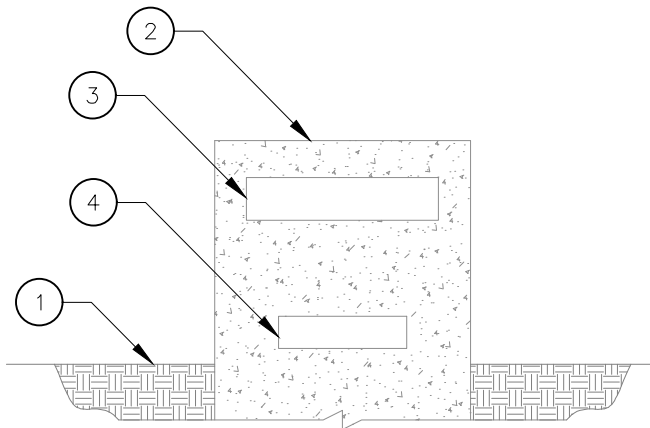
A proposed retrofit to the outlet control structure at this location can better capitalize on excess storage capacity, reduce peak flow rates to meet the majority of SD1 regulations for flood control, and better manage storm water runoff during the small-scale typical year rainfall events. The following retrofit is proposed on the outlet control structure:

- Fasten a stainless-steel plate with a 7-inch diameter orifice/opening to the headwall at the bottom of the basin over the existing 18-inch diameter low-flow storm sewer.
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate over all three of the 24-inch by 6-inch middle windows on the outlet control structure.

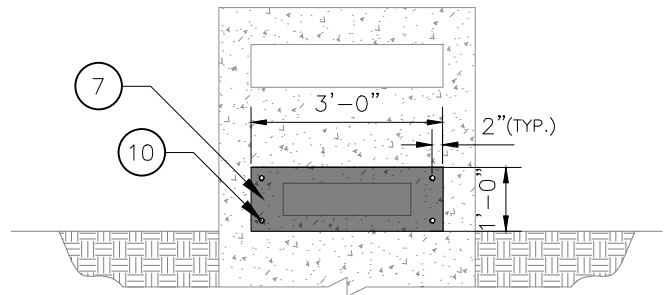
These modifications to the existing outlet control structure are primarily intended to provide better attenuation of flows during small storm events but will also improve the basin to reduce exceedances of $Q_{critical}$ flow rates. With a drainage area of 11.46 acres, the $Q_{critical}$ target (0.4 cfs per acre) for this basin is 4.58 cfs, which will be achieved during the smaller typical year events up to and including the 2-year storm event. Table 1 provides a summary of the storm water modeling results, and Figure 4 displays the proposed detention basin retrofit detail. Detailed storm water modeling output files are provided at the end of this document.

	Pre-Dev	Current Post-Development			Proposed Retrofit		
Design Storm	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used
3-month 24-hour	2.27	7.56	745.29	0.2%	2.97	749.11	6.4%
6-month 24-hour	5.61	12.25	746.32	0.6%	3.44	750.95	14.8%
1-year 24-hour	10.30	16.23	747.88	3.0%	3.82	752.62	26.9%
2-year 24-hour	15.64	19.31	749.40	7.4%	4.11	753.98	41.1%
10-year 24-hour	31.92	24.68	752.67	27.3%	24.48	755.65	70.6%
25-year 24-hour	42.64	36.91	753.78	38.7%	38.45	756.12	72.7%
50-year 24-hour	51.48	42.94	754.44	46.9%	49.12	756.44	78.5%
100-year 24-hour	60.92	48.27	755.08	55.8%	58.25	756.79	85.2%
$Q_{critical}$	-	None of the design storms are less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 4.58 cfs.			Design storms up to the 2-year 24-hour event are less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 4.58 cfs.		

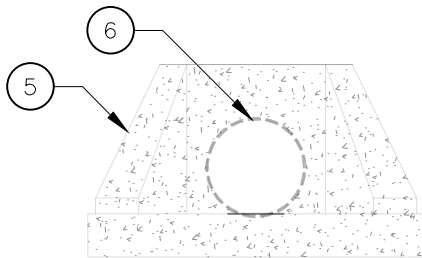
Table 1 Summary of Holbrook Lane Modeling Results



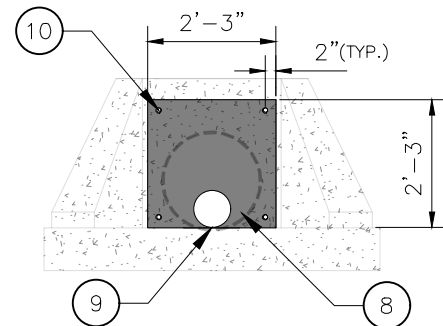
1 EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE
4 NO SCALE



3 PROPOSED STRUCTURE MODIFICATIONS
4 NO SCALE



2 EXISTING LOW FLOW HEADWALL
4 NO SCALE



4 PROPOSED HEADWALL MODIFICATIONS
4 NO SCALE

KEY NOTES:

- (1) EXISTING GROUND.
- (2) EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE.
- (3) EXISTING 36" X 8" UPPER WINDOW, TOTAL OF 4.
- (4) EXISTING 24" X 6" MIDDLE WINDOW, TOTAL OF 3.
- (5) EXISTING LOW FLOW HEADWALL.
- (6) EXISTING 18-IN DIAMETER LOW FLOW PIPE.
- (7) PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN, TO COVER ALL 3 OF THE EXISTING WINDOWS (QUANTITY = 3).
- (8) PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN (QUANTITY = 1).
- (9) PROVIDE 7-IN DIAMETER CUTOUT IN RESTRICTOR PLATE. CUTOUT SHALL BE AT THE BOTTOM OF THE RESTRICTOR PLATE WITH NO LIP.
- (10) 3/8-IN DIAMETER STAINLESS STEEL BOLT WITH 3/8-IN STAINLESS STEEL DROP-IN EXPANSION ANCHOR, EMBEDDED TO A MINIMUM OF 1 9/16-IN.

**HOLBROOK LANE DETENTION BASIN (018.12.0667)
RETROFIT DETAILS**

**STORM WATER MANAGEMENT OPPORTUINITIES ANALYSIS
SANITATION DISTRICT NO. 1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
FT. WRIGHT, KY**

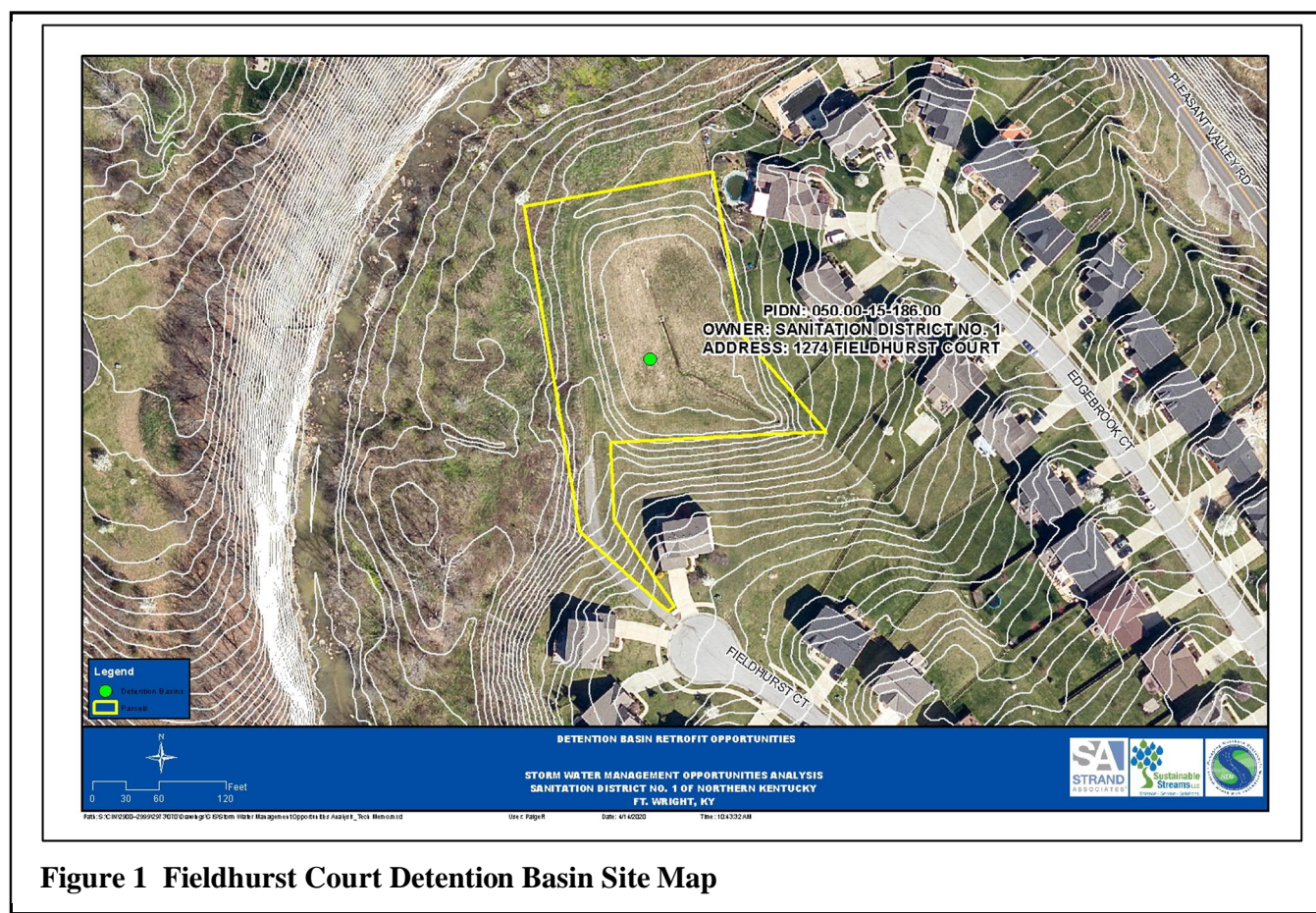


FIGURE 4

2973.070

Fieldhurst Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 018.13.0566)

The Fieldhurst Court detention basin is located between Edgebrook Court and Fieldhurst Court near Burlington, and is within the Gunpowder Creek watershed. The basin was constructed during the development of the Carters Mill Subdivision and collects storm water runoff predominantly from the residential development along Harvestdale Lane, Edgebrook Court and Fieldhurst Court. The basin falls within one parcel owned by SD1 and is accessible from either Edgebrook Court or Fieldhurst Court. The detention basin is owned and maintained by SD1, and the existing outlet control structure is owned by SD1 and is labeled as Structure Number 018.13.0487 according to SD1 GIS data. Figure 1 displays a site map of the detention basin.



The drainage area tributary to the detention basin encompasses approximately 18.71 acres, which is displayed in Figure 2. The total estimated storage volume of the detention basin is approximately 3.54 acre-feet. The ratio of storage volume capacity (acre-feet) to drainage area (acres) of 18.9 percent appears to indicate that excess storage capacity may be available within the detention basin, and therefore retrofits could potentially utilize this excess storage capacity by reducing peak flow rates.

SD1 staff conducted a site visit to the detention basin to take measurements on the existing outlet control structure. The outlet configuration includes two 4-foot by 4-foot square-shaped concrete boxes, one at the bottom of the basin and one on the side slope of the basin. An 18-inch diameter storm sewer provides drainage from the bottom concrete structure to the outlet on the side slope of the basin, which ultimately drains through a 36-inch diameter outlet pipe to the west. Each outlet control structure box includes a series of four windows,

each measuring 36 inches wide by 6 inches tall. Figure 3 displays photos of the existing detention basin and outlet control structure that were taken during the site visit.



Figure 2 Fieldhurst Court Detention Basin Drainage Area Map



Outlet Control Structure at Bottom of Basin



Outlet Control Structure on Side Slope of Basin

Figure 3 Photos of Fieldhurst Court Detention Basin

Storm water modeling was conducted to evaluate the functionality of the detention basin in existing conditions, as well as how the detention basin will operate in post-retrofit conditions. Based on the results of the modeling, the existing detention basin appears to meet the majority of the SD1 regulations for post-construction storm water management for flood control in all of the design storms analyzed. The only criteria that the existing detention basin does not appear to meet is the $Q_{critical}$ requirement for the 2-year design storm, where the peak flow rate out of the basin is higher than the $Q_{critical}$ threshold. Despite that, only approximately 51 percent of the storage volume capacity in the basin is currently utilized during the 100-year design storm, indicating excess storage volume is available and could be capitalized on by reducing peak flow rates from the basin.

A proposed retrofit to the outlet control structure at this location can better capitalize on this excess storage capacity, reduce peak flow rates to meet SD1 regulations for flood control and $Q_{critical}$, and better manage storm water runoff during the small-scale typical year rainfall events. The following retrofit is proposed on the outlet control structures:

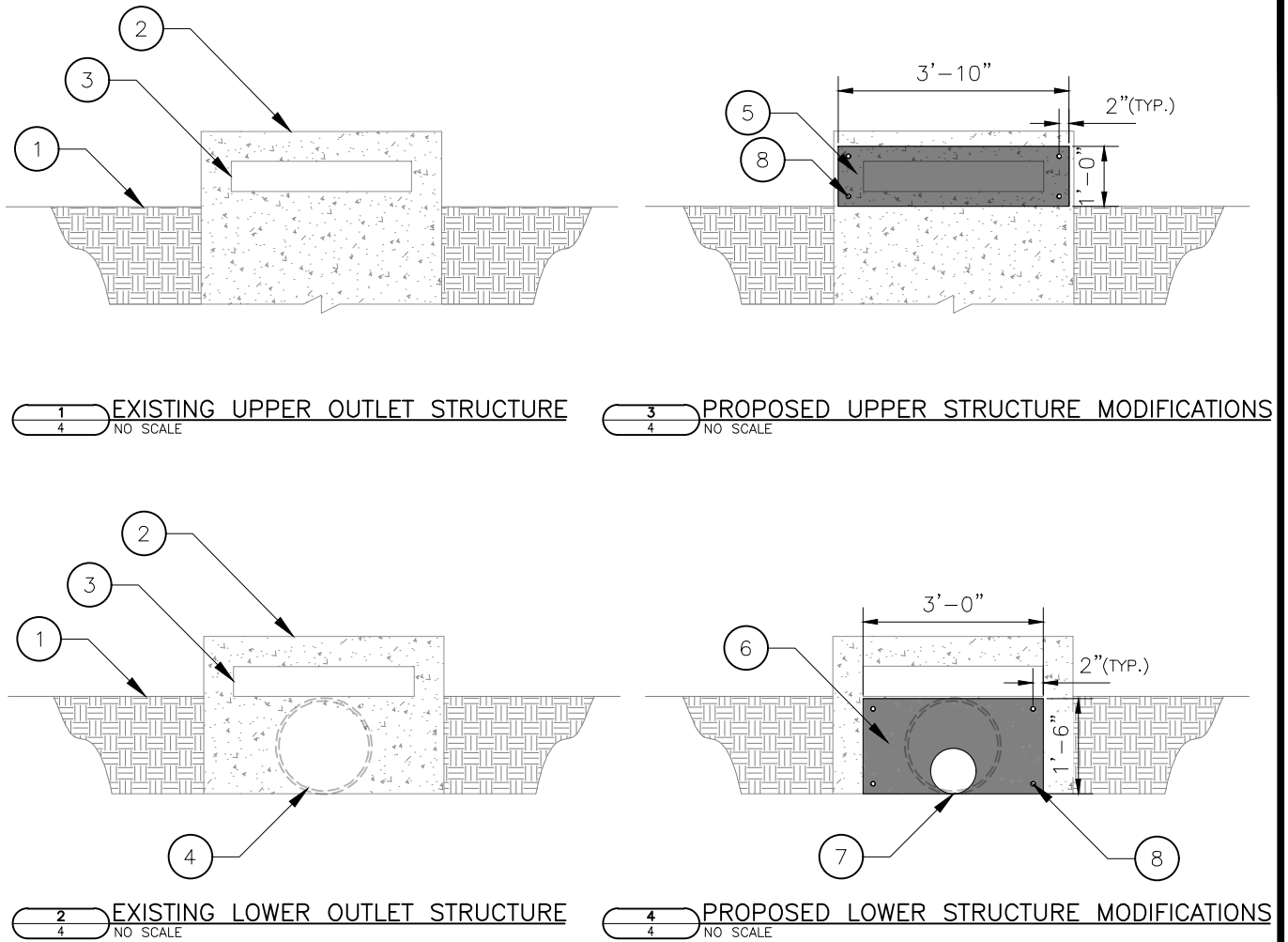
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate with a 9-inch diameter orifice/opening to the upstream end of the existing 18-inch diameter low-flow storm sewer within the outlet structure at the bottom of the basin.
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate over all four of the 36-inch by 6-inch windows on the upper outlet control structure on the side slope of the basin.

This modification to the existing outlet control structure is primarily intended to provide better attenuation of flows during small storm events but will also improve the basin to reduce exceedances of $Q_{critical}$ flow rates. With a drainage area of 18.71 acres, the $Q_{critical}$ target (0.4 cfs per acre) for this basin is 7.48 cfs, which will be achieved during the smaller typical year events up to an including the 2-year storm event. Table 1 provides a summary of the storm water modeling results, and Figure 4 displays the proposed detention basin retrofit detail. Detailed storm water modeling output files are provided at the end of this document.

	Pre-Dev	Current Post-Development			Proposed Retrofit		
Design Storm	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used
3-month 24-hour	3.53	9.10	729.14	0.7%	3.23	729.68	3.7%
6-month 24-hour	8.81	11.20	729.61	3.1%	3.54	730.14	8.7%
1-year 24-hour	16.27	12.86	730.04	7.4%	3.87	730.69	15.8%
2-year 24-hour	24.77	14.06	730.48	12.9%	4.19	731.26	24.0%
10-year 24-hour	50.69	20.06	731.69	30.7%	8.20	732.67	46.8%
25-year 24-hour	67.70	36.22	732.17	38.3%	12.58	733.35	58.6%
50-year 24-hour	81.72	45.30	732.54	44.7%	15.11	733.95	69.5%
100-year 24-hour	96.70	55.62	732.92	51.0%	17.31	734.59	81.7%
$Q_{critical}$	-	None of the design storms are less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 7.48 cfs.			Design storms up to the 2-year 24-hour event are less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 7.48 cfs.		

Table 1 Summary of Fieldhurst Court Modeling Results

File: S:\CIN\2900--2999\2973\070\Drawings\CAD\Basin Retrofit Details.dwg Time: Jun 18, 2020 -- 2:19pm



KEY NOTES:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) EXISTING GROUND.</p> <p>(2) EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE.</p> <p>(3) EXISTING WINDOW, TOTAL OF 4.</p> <p>(4) EXISTING 18-IN DIAMETER LOW FLOW PIPE (ON INSIDE OF OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE).</p> | <p>(5) PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN, TO COVER ALL 4 OF THE EXISTING WINDOWS (QUANTITY = 4).</p> <p>(6) PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN (QUANTITY = 1).</p> <p>(7) PROVIDE 9-IN DIAMETER CUTOUT IN RESTRICTOR PLATE. CUTOUT SHALL BE AT THE BOTTOM OF THE RESTRICTOR PLATE WITH NO LIP.</p> <p>(8) 3/8-IN DIAMETER STAINLESS STEEL BOLT WITH 3/8-IN STAINLESS STEEL DROP-IN EXPANSION ANCHOR, EMBEDDED TO A MINIMUM OF 1 9/16-IN.</p> |
|---|---|

NOTE: EXISTING GRATE ON TOP OF LOWER OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE SHALL BE TEMPORARILY REMOVED DURING MODIFICATIONS TO THE LOW FLOW PIPE, AND REINSERTED FOLLOWING INSTALLATION OF RESTRICTOR PLATE.

FIELDHURST COURT DETENTION BASIN (018.13.0566)
RETROFIT DETAILS

STORM WATER MANAGEMENT OPPORTUNITIES ANALYSIS
SANITATION DISTRICT NO. 1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
FT. WRIGHT, KY



FIGURE 4

2973.070

Kassady Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 040.16.0523)

The Kassady Court detention basin is located between Urlage Drive and Kassady Court near Burlington, and is located within the Gunpowder Creek watershed. The basin was constructed during the development of the Gunpowder Trails Subdivision and collects storm water runoff predominantly from the residential development along Gordon Boulevard, Summertime Lane, and the southern portion of Owl Overlook and Kassady Court. The basin falls within one parcel owned by SD1 and is accessible from Kassady Court. The detention basin is owned and maintained by SD1, and the existing outlet control structure is owned by SD1 and is labeled as Structure Number 040.16.0502 according to SD1 GIS data. Figure 1 displays a site map of the detention basin.



Figure 1 Kassady Court Detention Basin Site Map

The drainage area tributary to the detention basin encompasses approximately 18.45 acres, which is displayed in Figure 2. The total estimated storage volume capacity of the detention basin is approximately 1.22 acre-feet. The ratio of storage volume capacity (acre-feet) to drainage area (acres) of 6.6 percent appears to indicate that excess storage capacity may be somewhat limited within the detention basin, but basin retrofits could potentially reduce peak flow rates during the smaller typical year events.

SD1 staff conducted a site visit to the detention basin to take measurements on the existing outlet control structure. The existing outlet control structure is a 4-foot by 4-foot square shaped concrete box with a row of four windows near the top (each measuring approximately 24 inches wide by 6 inches tall), a row of four windows near the middle (each measuring approximately 24 inches wide by 6 inches tall), and a row of three

windows near the bottom (each measuring approximately 24 inches wide by 6 inches tall). SD1 staff noted that two of the three bottom windows were blocked by debris during the site visit. Figure 3 displays photos of the existing detention basin and outlet control structure that were taken during the site visit.



Figure 2 Kassady Court Detention Basin Drainage Area Map



Detention Basin Outlet Control Structure



Overview of Detention Basin

Figure 3 Photos of Kassady Court Detention Basin

Storm water modeling was conducted to evaluate the functionality of the detention basin in existing conditions, as well as how the detention basin will operate in post-retrofit conditions. Based on the results of the modeling, the existing detention basin does not appear to meet SD1 regulations for post-construction storm water management for flood control in the smaller design storms analyzed. For design storms up to and including the 2-year event, the current post-development peak flow rates being discharged from the detention basin are higher than pre-development peak flow rates, despite only approximately 75 percent of the storage volume being utilized during the 100-year design storm.

A proposed retrofit to the outlet control structure at this location can better capitalize on excess storage capacity, reduce peak flow rates to meet the majority of SD1 regulations for flood control, and better manage storm water runoff during the small-scale typical year rainfall events. The following retrofit is proposed on the outlet control structure:

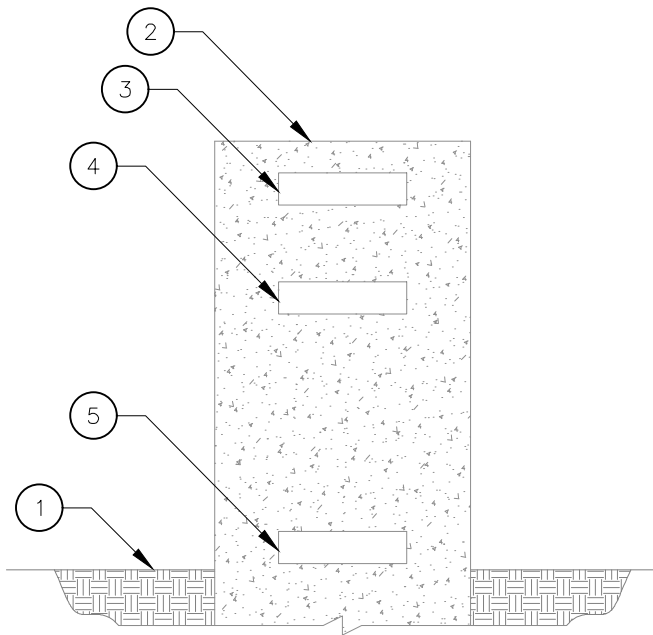
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate over two of the three 24-inch by 6-inch lower windows on the outlet control structure.
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate over two of the four 24-inch by 6-inch middle windows on the outlet control structure.

These modifications to the existing outlet control structure are primarily intended to provide better attenuation of flows during small storm events but will also improve the basin to reduce exceedances of $Q_{critical}$ flow rates. With a drainage area of 18.45 acres, the $Q_{critical}$ target (0.4 cfs per acre) for this basin is 7.38 cfs, which will be achieved during the 3-month storm event. Table 1 provides a summary of the storm water modeling results, and Figure 4 displays the proposed detention basin retrofit detail. Detailed storm water modeling output files are provided at the end of this document.

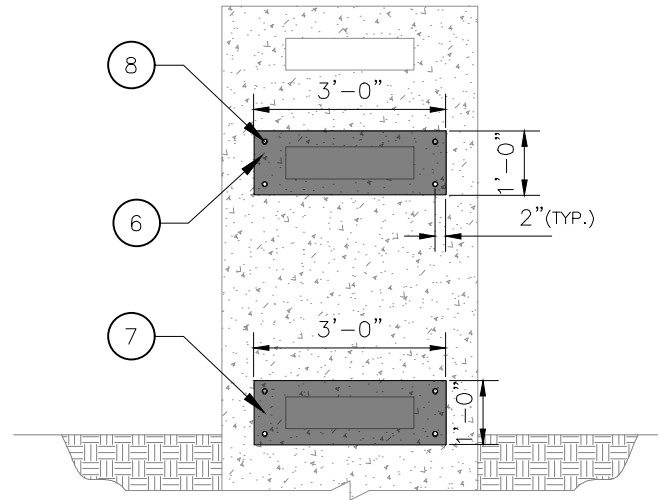
	Pre-Dev	Current Post-Development			Proposed Retrofit		
Design Storm	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used
3-month 24-hour	3.40	9.42	830.26	0.2%	6.76	832.05	2.8%
6-month 24-hour	8.54	16.59	830.78	0.5%	11.44	833.31	9.1%
1-year 24-hour	15.80	23.62	831.92	2.4%	17.72	834.01	15.5%
2-year 24-hour	24.08	30.26	833.08	7.6%	22.59	834.72	24.9%
10-year 24-hour	49.34	49.00	834.55	22.2%	46.94	835.75	45.3%
25-year 24-hour	65.93	54.04	835.48	39.0%	57.18	836.29	59.7%
50-year 24-hour	79.60	57.37	836.14	55.5%	60.33	836.77	74.2%
100-year 24-hour	94.21	60.45	836.79	75.1%	62.85	837.32	93.3%
$Q_{critical}$	-	None of the design storms are less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 7.38 cfs.			Design storms up to the 3-month 24-hour event is less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 7.38 cfs.		

Table 1 Summary of Kassady Court Modeling Results

File: S:\CIN\2900--2999\2973\070\Drawings\CAD\Basin Retrofit Details.dwg Time: Jun 18, 2020 -- 2:23pm



1
4
EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE
NO SCALE



2
4
PROPOSED STRUCTURE MODIFICATIONS
NO SCALE

KEY NOTES:

- 1 EXISTING GROUND.
- 2 EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE.
- 3 EXISTING 24" X 6" UPPER WINDOWS, TOTAL OF 4.
- 4 EXISTING 24" X 6" MIDDLE WINDOWS, TOTAL OF 4.
- 5 EXISTING 24" X 6" LOWER WINDOWS, TOTAL OF 3.
- 6 PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN, TO COVER 2 OF THE EXISTING 4 MIDDLE WINDOWS (QUANTITY = 2).
- 7 PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN, TO COVER 2 OF THE EXISTING 3 LOWER WINDOWS (QUANTITY = 2).
- 8 3/8-IN DIAMETER STAINLESS STEEL BOLT WITH 3/8-IN STAINLESS STEEL DROP-IN EXPANSION ANCHOR, EMBEDDED TO A MINIMUM OF 1 9/16-IN.

NOTE: EXISTING SEDIMENT AND DEBRIS THAT HAS CLOGGED 2 OF THE 3 LOWER WINDOWS SHALL BE REMOVED PRIOR TO INSTALLATION OF RESTRICTOR PLATE.

**KASSADY COURT DETENTION BASIN (040.16.0523)
RETROFIT DETAILS**

**STORM WATER MANAGEMENT OPPORTUNITIES ANALYSIS
SANITATION DISTRICT NO. 1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
FT. WRIGHT, KY**



FIGURE 4

2973.070

Rurel Court Detention Basin (Basin Number 040.16.0524)

The Rurel Court Detention Basin is located between Owl Overlook and Rurel Court near Burlington, and is located within the Gunpowder Creek watershed. The basin was constructed during the development of the Gunpowder Trails Subdivision and collects storm water runoff predominantly from the residential development along Rurel Court, and portions of Owl Overlook, Kassady Court and Gordon Boulevard. The basin falls within one parcel owned by SD1 and is accessible from Rurel Court. The detention basin is owned and maintained by SD1, and the existing outlet control structure is owned by SD1 and is labeled as Structure Number 040.16.0455 according to SD1 GIS data. Figure 1 displays a site map of the detention basin.



Figure 1 Rurel Court Detention Basin Site Map

The drainage area tributary to the detention basin encompasses approximately 12.27 acres, which is displayed in Figure 2. The total estimated storage volume capacity of the detention basin is approximately 1.51 acre-feet. The ratio of storage volume capacity (acre-feet) to drainage area (acres) of 12.3 percent appears to indicate that excess storage capacity may be available within the detention basin, and therefore retrofits could potentially utilize this excess storage capacity by reducing peak flow rates.

SD1 staff conducted a site visit to the detention basin to take measurements on the existing outlet control structure. The existing outlet control structure is a 4-foot by 4-foot square shaped concrete box with one window near the top (measuring approximately 36 inches wide by 6 inches tall), a row of two windows near the middle (each measuring approximately 36 inches wide by 6 inches tall), and a “low-flow” discharge pipe at the bottom of the basin. This discharge pipe is a 9-inch diameter storm sewer with a headwall that is directly

connected to the outlet structure, which sits higher on the side slope of the detention basin. Figure 3 displays photos of the existing detention basin and outlet control structure that were taken during the site visit.



Figure 2 Rurel Court Detention Basin Drainage Area Map



Detention Basin Outlet Control Structure



Overview of Detention Basin

Figure 3 Photos of Rurel Court Detention Basin

Storm water modeling was conducted to evaluate the functionality of the detention basin in existing conditions, as well as how the detention basin will operate in post-retrofit conditions. Based on the results of the modeling, the existing detention basin appears to meet the majority of the SD1 regulations for post-construction storm water management for flood control in all of the design storms analyzed. The only criteria that the existing detention basin does not appear to meet is the $Q_{critical}$ requirement for the 2-year design storm, where the peak flow rate out of the detention basin is higher than the $Q_{critical}$ threshold.

A proposed retrofit to the outlet control structure at this location can better capitalize on the excess storage capacity, reduce peak flow rates to meet SD1 regulations for flood control and $Q_{critical}$, and better manage storm water runoff during the small-scale typical year rainfall events. The following retrofit is proposed on the outlet control structure:

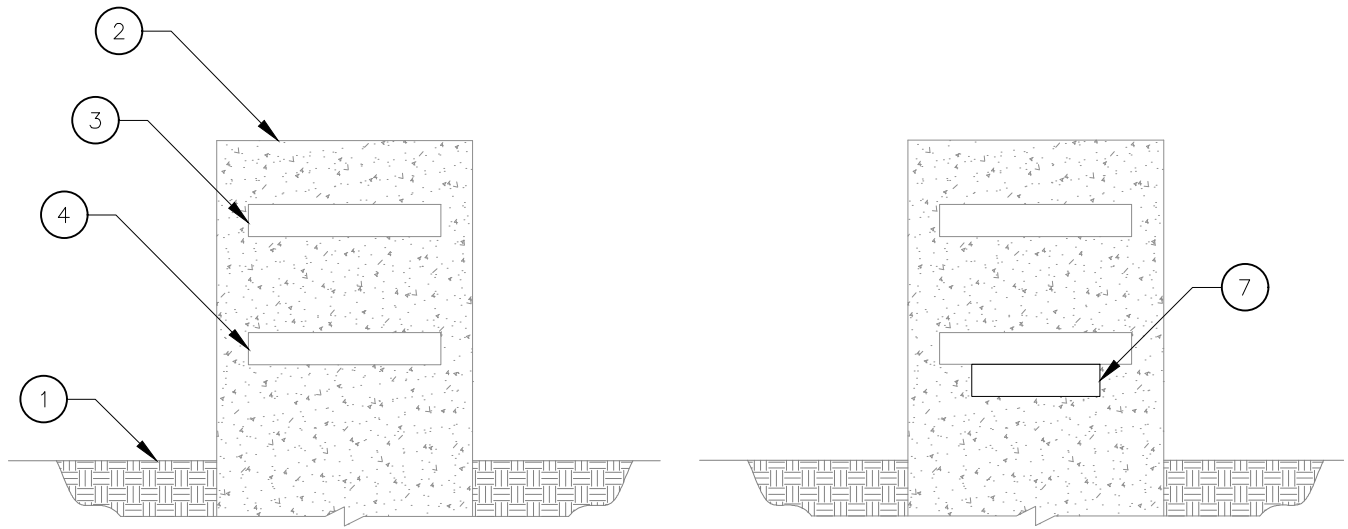
- Fasten a stainless-steel plate with a 6-inch diameter orifice/opening to the headwall at the bottom of the basin over the existing 9-inch diameter low-flow storm sewer.
- Saw cut a new window on the outlet control structure six inches below the two existing windows near the middle of the outlet control structure. The dimensions of the new window will be 24 inches wide by 6 inches tall and is needed to prevent overtopping of the basin during larger design storms.

These modifications to the existing outlet control structure are primarily intended to provide better attenuation of flows during small storm events but will also improve the basin to reduce exceedances of $Q_{critical}$ flow rates. With a drainage area of 12.27 acres, the $Q_{critical}$ target (0.4 cfs per acre) for this basin is 4.91 cfs, which will be achieved during the smaller typical year events up to an including the 2-year storm event. Table 1 provides a summary of the storm water modeling results, and Figure 4 displays the proposed detention basin retrofit detail. Detailed storm water modeling output files are provided at the end of this document.

	Pre-Dev	Current Post-Development			Proposed Retrofit		
Design Storm	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used	Peak Flow Rate (cfs)	Water Surface Elevation (ft)	Percent Storage Used
3-month 24-hour	2.30	3.33	785.83	4.6%	1.69	786.44	7.3%
6-month 24-hour	5.75	4.07	787.04	10.7%	1.99	787.68	15.2%
1-year 24-hour	10.63	4.68	788.22	19.7%	2.25	788.92	26.5%
2-year 24-hour	16.18	5.16	789.26	30.3%	2.46	790.01	39.6%
10-year 24-hour	33.13	13.17	791.27	58.1%	17.31	791.48	61.5%
25-year 24-hour	44.26	21.09	792.06	71.5%	25.10	792.22	74.5%
50-year 24-hour	53.43	25.17	792.68	83.1%	30.19	792.85	86.4%
100-year 24-hour	63.22	32.19	793.29	95.4%	38.39	793.42	98.3%
$Q_{critical}$	-	Design storm up to the 1-year 24-hour storm is less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 4.91 cfs.			Design storm up to the 2-year 24-hour storm is less than $Q_{critical}$ estimate of 4.91 cfs.		

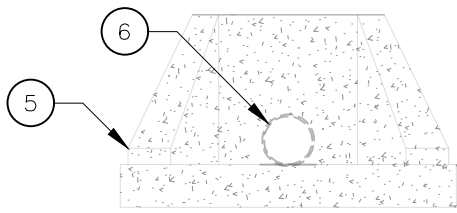
Table 1 Summary of Rurel Court Modeling Results

File: S:\CIN\2900--2999\2973\070\Drawings\CAD\Basin Retrofit Details.dwg Time: Jun 18, 2020 - 2:23pm

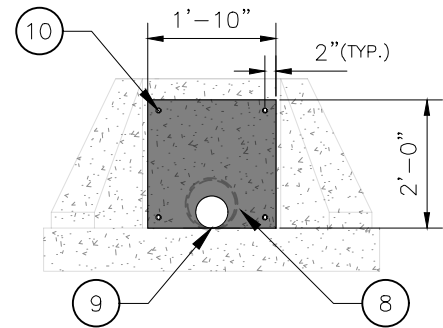


1
4
EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE
NO SCALE

3
4
PROPOSED STRUCTURE MODIFICATIONS
NO SCALE



2
4
EXISTING LOW FLOW HEADWALL
NO SCALE



4
4
PROPOSED HEADWALL MODIFICATIONS
NO SCALE

KEY NOTES:

- 1 EXISTING GROUND.
- 2 EXISTING OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE.
- 3 EXISTING 36" X 6" WINDOW, TOTAL OF 1.
- 4 EXISTING 36" X 6" WINDOW, TOTAL OF 2.
- 5 EXISTING LOW FLOW HEADWALL.
- 6 EXISTING 9-IN DIAMETER LOW FLOW PIPE.

- 7 SAW CUT 1 WINDOW ON OUTLET CONTROL STRUCTURE, 24 IN WIDE BY 6 IN TALL, WITH BOTTOM ELEVATION OF WINDOW 6 IN BELOW BOTTOM ELEVATION OF EXISTING ROW OF 2 WINDOWS.
- 8 PROVIDE STAINLESS STEEL RESTRICTOR PLATE, MINIMUM THICKNESS = 3/16-IN (QUANTITY = 1).
- 9 PROVIDE 6-IN DIAMETER CUTOUT IN RESTRICTOR PLATE. CUTOUT SHALL BE AT THE BOTTOM OF THE RESTRICTOR PLATE WITH NO LIP.
- 10 3/8-IN DIAMETER STAINLESS STEEL BOLT WITH 3/8-IN STAINLESS STEEL DROP-IN EXPANSION ANCHOR, EMBEDDED TO A MINIMUM OF 1 9/16-IN.

NOTE: EXISTING TRASH RACK ON LOW FLOW HEADWALL SHALL BE TEMPORARILY REMOVED DURING MODIFICATIONS TO THE LOW FLOW HEADWALL, AND REFASTENED FOLLOWING INSTALLATION OF RESTRICTOR PLATE.

RUREL COURT DETENTION BASIN (040.16.0524)
RETROFIT DETAILS

STORM WATER MANAGEMENT OPPORTUINITIES ANALYSIS
SANITATION DISTRICT NO. 1 OF NORTHERN KENTUCKY
FT. WRIGHT, KY



FIGURE 4
2973.070

Appendix E: Documentation for Hydromodification Decision Tree Mapping Memo

Documentation for Hydromodification Decision Tree Mapping



**Prepared for SD1
By Sustainable Streams
September 2014**

The following memo documents the assumptions associated with the map booklets that were developed for Sanitation District No. 1 of Northern Kentucky's (SD1) in support of the Hydromodification Decision Tree. This includes the channel risk maps that rank Northern Kentucky streams as low, medium, or high and the channel buffer maps that identify areas in Northern Kentucky requiring a 50-foot and 25-foot buffers according to KYR10.

Channel Risk Maps:

The channel risk maps have been created to identify the likelihood of a stream reach to be impacted by hydromodification and should be used in conjunction with the Hydromodification Decision Tree. The color-coded risk categories are meant to help SD1 staff, developers, and engineers better understand the hydromodification areas of concern throughout Northern Kentucky. As more assessment data become available, including performance data of BMP strategies and policies designed to protect channel stability, the following hierarchy and risk classifications may be revisited to ensure that this guidance is working as intended.

Hydromodification data was collected using the following documents. If a single site had multiple stability scores, the hierarchy in the order listed was followed to determine which value to use.

1. 2012 and 2013 Rapid Stability Indices calculated in the field
2. A Stream Condition Index for Water Utility Resource Management in Northern Kentucky (LimnoTech, 2013)
3. Regionally-calibrated Channel Stability Index for Northern Kentucky Streams (Sustainable Streams, 2012)
4. Gunpowder Creek Watershed Plan (data collected in 2011 and 2012) and Woolper Creek Watershed Plan (data collected in 2012 and 2013)

Next, the stability index score was classified as medium or high risk for hydromodification. Sites that are considered high risk have a stability score of less than or equal to two (i.e., unstable and a high risk of continued failure) or greater than six (i.e., stable reaches that should be protected to the greatest extent feasible in order to reduce the risk of impact). Medium risk sites have stability scores greater than two and less than or equal to six. These thresholds were chosen by evaluating the Rapid Stability Indices data from 2012 and 2013 and selecting scores that would put approximately half the sites into the medium risk category and half the sites into the high risk category in order to provide more utility to SD1 ([Figure 1](#)). That is, both medium and high risk classifications imply that the stream is susceptible hydromodification; however, the system facilitates prioritization of those reaches that are most unstable (score ≤ 2) and those that are still relatively stable where

adequate storm water management could potentially prevent the stream from undergoing long cycles of channel instability and degradation (score > 6).

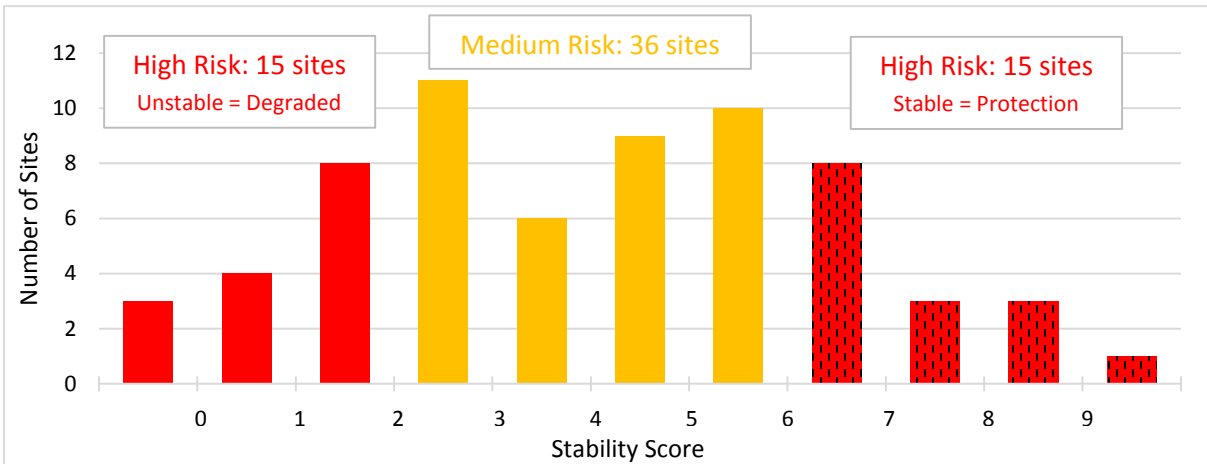


Figure 1. Analysis of stability scores using 2012 and 2013 raw data

Not all sites had previously been located in GIS. Both the notes in Appendix A of the 2013 LimnoTech report and the river mile associated with the stream name were used to map the locations of sites as necessary.

Once each hydromodification site was classified and located, the score for that site was transferred to the corresponding stream. Each site served as the downstream end of the stability score for that stream reach, with that score remaining constant along the stream until the upstream extent of the stream or the next upstream hydromodification site.

Both the Ohio River and the Licking River were considered to have low risk for hydromodification due to their extremely large watersheds relative to the contributions of local drainage. In addition, areas that experience backwater from these two rivers were also assumed to have a low risk for hydromodification. Hydromodification monitoring sites are intentionally located by SD1 staff in areas that are outside of the typical effects of backwater. Because no available GIS layers explicitly delineate regional backwater areas, a mapping rule was developed by comparing the elevation at each hydromodification site to the normal pool elevation of the Ohio River, or 453.6 feet, which was provided in the Watershed Characterization Reports from LimnoTech. This analysis showed that nearly every hydromodification monitoring site was at least 14 feet higher in elevation than the normal pool elevation of the Ohio River, or 468 feet, such that this elevation became the standard break between a classification of low (i.e. backwater zone) and the channel risk associated with the monitored stream reach that was upstream of the backwater zones. The two exceptions to this rule were Sand Run and Fourmile Creek, which had hydromodification sites at two feet and four feet above the Ohio River's normal pool elevation, respectively.

Any stream reach that lacked a downstream hydromodification monitoring site and was outside of the backwater zone was not classified. As detailed in the decision tree, these reaches should still have consideration for hydromodification.

Channel Buffer Maps:

The channel buffer maps have been developed as a graphical representation of areas throughout Northern Kentucky where 50-foot and 25-foot wide buffers should be required between the stream and development,

according to the Kentucky Division of Water (KDOW) general permit for storm water discharges associated with construction activities, or KYR10.

For discharges to receiving waters designated as Outstanding State Resource Water or receiving waters that have been listed in the 2010 Integrated Water Quality 305(b) Report to Congress as an impaired water for sediment for which an approved total maximum daily load (TMDL) has not been developed for pollutants of concern that may be discharged from the facility permittees, a minimum a 50-foot buffer zone is required between any disturbance and all edges of the receiving water as means of providing adequate protection to receiving waters. Outstanding State Resource Waters were included regardless of their additional categorizations (i.e., Exceptional Water, Reference Reach, and Threatened/Endangered). There are no Coldwater Aquatic Habitat or Outstanding National Resource Water designations in Northern Kentucky, although these receiving waters would be required to maintain a 50-foot minimum buffer zone also. The designations were collected from the EEC Division of Water Kentucky's Special Waters database on October 8, 2014. Additionally, KDOW data available from the Kentucky Geography Network were used.

KDOW's default categorization for all assessed waters that are not impaired as well as all unassessed waters is "High Quality Waters." For discharges to receiving waters categorized as High Quality Waters or Impaired Waters (non-sediment), permittees are required maintain at a minimum a 25-foot buffer zone between any disturbance and all edges of the receiving water as means of providing adequate protection to receiving waters.